

A Comprehensive Guide to

IELTS Academic Writing Task 2

**A step-by-step method
to improve your
IELTS writing skills**

Daniel Shirmarz

Copyright © 2017

Cosmopolitan Educational Books (CEB)

All rights reserved, including resale rights. This e-book is sold subject to the condition that it will not be copied, duplicated, stored or distributed for any purpose or in any form. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, or by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the author.

ISBN-10: 9643609499

ISBN-13: 978-9643609498

Table of Contents

[Introduction](#)

[UNIT 1: Discussion Essay](#)

[UNIT 2: Opinion Essay](#)

[UNIT 3: Problem and Solution Essay](#)

[UNIT 4: Cause and Effect Essay](#)

[UNIT 5: Cause/Effect and Solution Essay](#)

[UNIT 6: Advantage and Disadvantage Essay](#)

[UNIT 7: Evaluation Essay](#)

[Grammar Bank](#)

[Conjunctions](#)

[Article: *the*](#)

[Uncountable nouns](#)

[Adverbs](#)

[Adjectives](#)

[Pronouns](#)

[Preparatory subject *it*](#)

[Verbs: singular and plural](#)

[Ellipsis](#)

[Using gerund](#)

[Tenses](#)

[Punctuation](#)

[Spelling](#)

[Conditionals](#)

[Modals](#)

[Clauses](#)

[Topic-based Vocabulary Bank](#)

[CITY LIFE](#)

[COUNTRYSIDE and FARMING](#)

[CRIME](#)

[EDUCATION](#)

[FAMILY](#)

[FOOD and DIET](#)

[GLOBAL CHALLENGES and ENVIRONMENT](#)

[SPORT](#)

[THE GOVERNMENT](#)

[WORK and BUSINESS](#)

[Useful tips on IELTS academic writing task 2](#)

[General vocabulary List](#)

[About author](#)

Introduction

Read this first please!

This book is the outcome of years of teaching IELTS writing module and contains a rather complete method of practicing and writing well-structured academic task 2 essays and overcome its possible difficulties.

The first half of this book goes through different types of task 2 essays like discussion, opinion, etc. and fleshes them out with several model essays for each type at the end of each unit. The first six units show IELTS candidates how exactly they need to write a well-structured essay with a precise sense of timing. Each type of essay is analysed sentence by sentence and the structure including grammar, vocab, etc. is succinctly clarified in a practical way throughout the process. Candidates do not need to read the units from the beginning to the end. They can choose a unit based on their need and read it independently to learn and master a specific type of essay.

It is important for the candidate to focus on timing and the number of words suggested for each sentence and paragraph, because it will help them get as organised as possible, wrap the essay up based on a realistic timescale and tie up the loose ends on time.

At the end of each unit, there is a summary of the whole unit, i.e. the structure of paragraphs, the number of sentences and words, timescale, etc., which might assist the candidate to have the whole process on a single page. There are also model essays written carefully at the end of each unit providing candidates with more practical examples of what was set out throughout the unit.

The topic-based practice tasks are meticulously chosen in order to get candidates practice what they have already learnt based on common IELTS topics such as family, crime, environment, etc. Once they have written each essay, the candidates may have their essays corrected by the author through his online correction service on his official website: www.ieltswritingguide.com.

Additionally, candidates need to refer to the topic-based vocabulary bank at the end of book and make their best attempt to use the suggested vocabulary and collocations while writing their essays. It is better for the candidates to go through the topic-based vocabulary bank before writing an essay because this part of the book is not just a simple collection of vocab, but teemed with various ideas which can be used in different sorts of task 2

essays.

Although grammatical structures essential to write each type of essay are embedded in each unit, there is a grammar bank in appendix 1, which offers a variety of grammatical tips from the usage of *the* to the correct usage of *tenses* and *conditionals* with examples necessary to write a proper task 2 essay. Candidates can also refer to grammar books such as *English Grammar in Use* (Murphy, R.), *Practical English Usage* (Swan, M.), *How English Works* (Swan, M & Walter, C.) and *An A-Z of English Grammar & Usage* (Leech, Cruickshank & Ivanič) in order to improve and empower their grammar to a further extent.

This book is designed to assist IELTS candidates to fulfil four criteria, i.e. *Task Response*, *Coherence and Cohesion*, *Lexical Resource* and *Grammatical Range and Accuracy*, based on which examiners assess and mark their essays. In addition, the Author of this book has written a series of grammar books which are going to be published soon and might assist not only the general English learners, but IELTS candidates to hone their grammar skills.

Task Response refers to how well a candidate has understood the topic question and rubric as well as how sufficiently they have addressed the task. Well-supported ideas which are extended to a logical degree will definitely result in a higher band, whereas a candidate may lose marks if not focussed enough on the task through supporting ideas. Inadequate development, ambiguity, repetitive ideas and over-generalisation are other negative factors which might cause a candidate lose marks.

Coherence and Cohesion is about how logically and fluently a candidate sequences relevant information and their ideas through efficient paragraphing using appropriate conjunctions or linking words and phrases. A series of ideas related to the topic should be organised in order to present a clear central topic in each paragraph without being mechanical or using inappropriate sentence structures. It is important for a candidate to know that overuse or repetition of linking words or any other grammatical structure might harm the overall coherence of a paragraph, appear confusing and lead to a lower band.

Lexical Resource means the range, complexity, flexibility and fluency of vocabulary and collocations a candidate uses in their writing to convey specific meanings, which helps the examiner assess a candidate's level and awareness of style. Word choice and spelling are two important factors

affecting the quality of a piece of writing. Another paramount criterion for an examiner is how often a candidate repeats certain vocab and collocations without paraphrasing them in different ways. Therefore, it is crucial for an IELTS candidate to learn and practice paraphrasing techniques.

Grammatical Range and Accuracy is all about how often simple and complex sentence structures are used in an essay as well as grammatical mistakes and awareness of punctuation. Candidates of higher levels have the ability of using a wide range of grammatical structures accurately with minor errors which are almost negligible, but lower level candidates use limited grammar range which might reduce communication with the reader, sometimes distort the meaning and result in lower band. Overall, readability and comprehensibility are the main characteristics of an academic essay, meaning that the sentences should be syntactically well-structured and should not exceed certain length. It is recommended to avoid overlong sentences as well.

Finally, I hope this book will aid IELTS test-takers to tackle the problematic areas of their writing in order to get the best result they wish.

Daniel Shirmarz

UNIT 1: Discussion Essay

“Discussion” essays ask you to discuss both sides of an argument from the proponents’ and opponents’ viewpoints, who are in favour of the topical question or do not agree with it. The topic may present something good or bad, and ask you to have a discussion about what the supporters stand up for or the opponents try to reject, and give reasons for your argument.

Discussion topic questions could be presented in different ways such as:

Consider both sides of this debate and reach a conclusion.

Discuss both sides of the debate, and give your personal view.

Discuss both sides of this debate, and reach a conclusion based on your own opinion.

Discuss these opposing views and give your own opinion.

Some people believe that... Other people disagree... Consider these opposing views, and give your opinion.

What are the arguments for and against...?

What is your own view about this?

Discuss both sides.

A “Discussion” essay question normally introduces a topic which shows the negatives or positives of something, for example:

Some people think that boarding schools are an excellent option for children, while other people disagree for a number of reasons. Consider both sides of this debate and reach a conclusion.

In this topic “boarding schools are an excellent option for children” is a good thing some agree and some disagree with. You have to put yourself in the place of the proponents - those who support the idea of the topic - or opponents -those who deny it- of the argument and give clear reasons why they approve or disapprove it and include relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

A “Discussion” essay usually consists of four paragraphs. You should introduce the topic through the 1st paragraph, i.e. introduction, discuss two sides of the debate in the two body paragraphs, and finally give your opinion in the conclusion paragraph, i.e. the last paragraph, preferably in an

impersonal way. Impersonal sentences usually start with “*There*” or “*It*”.

Before you start writing the essay, you should spend 5 minutes to brainstorm some ideas for each of two body paragraphs you are going to write. To brainstorm ideas you can write down the ideas pop into your mind, you may put the key words and phrases on paper as follows:

1st body paragraph:

Lower levels of stress/higher levels of output and service

A better work-life balance

2nd body paragraph:

Prone to psychological issues/loneliness and depression

Lose self-confidence/personal instability

Lack of security/negative impact on academic achievement

The introduction paragraph is usually made up of three long and short sentences. Using a combination of long and short sentences can give your paragraph(s) a sense of balance, otherwise it may lead to a dry and boring piece of writing without movement and diversity. Remember to avoid contractions like *It's*, *they're*, *there's*, *can't*, *shouldn't*, etc. You should not use phrasal verbs like *made up of*, *look through*, *catch up with*, etc. In addition to avoid personal tone (*I and me*) and examples, you need to avoid irrelevant examples and over-generalisation (*everyone*, *never*, etc.), meaning that you should not use sentences or ideas which seem to be absolutely right or wrong. We move on writing an academic essay on the balance of probabilities.

The first sentence is a general statement about the topic. It could also be a paraphrase of the topic question:

It is often said that pupils can benefit from boarding schools.

You can also use the following phrases to start this sentence and introduce impersonally the main idea of your essay. These phrases can be used in other paragraphs to form the beginning of a paragraph which contains a new idea:

It is often said or assumed that...

It is argued by some that...

There is a common belief that...

It is commonly believed that...
It is widely acknowledged that...
It is generally considered that...
Many people argue/say/feel/think/believe/opine that...
A growing number of people believe that...
Some say/argue/feel/believe that...
Many people hold the view that...
When it comes to..., some people think that...
Some people think we should... while others hold the opposite view.
A growing number of/More and more people are beginning to realize that...
Some people take/adopt a positive/negative stance on...
Some people claim/assert/contend/maintain/declare that...
Some people emphasise/highlight/stress the importance of...
Some people observe/note/comment/point out/mention that...
Some other people cast doubt on/question this idea and pinpoint...

The second sentence is a supplementary sentence which strengthens the first sentence. It adds an extra idea to the first point you have already made:

However, the issue is not entirely straight forward, and arguments can also be made against.

You can also use these phrases to add other ideas to the first one:

However, the issue is not completely straightforward...
It is their view/belief that...
They claim/argue/feel that...
This is because they say it is...
Another common belief about... is that...
There is also an argument that...
This means that...

The third sentence should show your plan, i.e. what you are going to do in your essay and what exact purpose it follows:

This essay will discuss the debate and draw a conclusion.

You may use other endings for the last sentence of the introduction paragraph:

This essay will discuss the debate and give a concluding view.

This essay will consider both sides of the discussion and (attempt to) draw a conclusion.

This essay will look at both sides of the argument and draw a reasonable conclusion.

This essay will examine/scrutinise both sides of the debate and reach a conclusion.

Having written the introduction paragraph, count the words once or twice and write the number next to the paragraph. It should approximately be 40-60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on your essay's introduction.

In the first body paragraph, as mentioned above, you should give some reasons to support the proponents of the topic idea and try to exemplify your reasons based on your experience or knowledge:

On the one hand, those who espouse boarding school as the best choice for children cite the various benefits it can bring to them. These range from personal independence to being more concentrated on school lessons. Furthermore, based on the viewpoint of boarding school supporters, students in such a school can possibly gain a sense of self-control and make their attempt to take everything under control in their personal life. Another argument is that children will get independently experienced in forging stable relationships through communication with their schoolmates.

It can be seen that the paragraph begins with “*On the one hand*”, which helps the reader realise that you are going to discuss the first side of the argument. You give the first reason why some believe that boarding school is the best option for children, using a phrase like “*those who espouse... cite...*”. You could also use the following structures:

According to the proponents of...

Based on what the supporters/advocates of... believe in,

Some firmly believe that...
Some say that...
Some argue/It is argued that...
Some postulate/It is postulated that...
Some claim/It is claimed that...
It is worth noting that...

In order to put together the reasons you are going to give, you may also use following linking words and phrases:

Firstly/initially, secondly and thirdly
First and foremost/first and most importantly
In the first place
Moreover/furthermore
In addition/additionally/similarly/likewise/as well as
Finally/eventually/above all
First thing to remember/realise is that...
Another key point is that...
What's more...
The first/second/third/final point is that...
To begin/start with...
In the second place/Then/Afterwards...

To give an example it is possible to use one of these chunks:

such as: *Admittedly, nowadays traditional dress has played an active role in social events such as religious ceremonies and military parades.*

for example: *In addition, it can have pernicious effects on the individuals who enjoy their leisure time, for example, in a restaurant.*

for instance: *For instance, most women normally don't fit the description necessary to work in a mine.*

take... as an example: *Take the UK as an example, which gets behind the poor both nationally and internationally.*

... is a good/typical example of this: *It is clear that the increasing number of city dwellers has led to higher stress levels resulting from sound and air pollution, due to reasons such as the citizens' tendency to drive their own cars frequently. New York City is a good example of this.*

A good/typical example of this is...: *A good example of this is New York City where people living in hinterland suffer all the time from maelstroms and congested roads in their neighbourhood.*

In other words: *In other words, smoking openly in places where families and friends get together for social purposes, could definitely have negative effects on youngsters and even change into their future habit.*

including: *Thirdly, extracted oil is a non-renewable form of energy and the production of petroleum, especially refining, produces harmful and toxic materials, including plastic.*

chiefly: *Climate change is the result of human activities chiefly in developed countries.*

especially: *On the other hand, there is an argument that it is not a good idea to push the students, especially those who are not sporty, to have regular workouts in school.*

mainly: *Poor sanitation in run-down areas is mainly due to the explosion in urban population and illegal immigration.*

That is to say: *Consumerism is the main reason why so much trash has been produced causing a variety of diseases and water pollution. That is to say that the more uncontrollably we consume modern products, the more our environment gets polluted and we get sick.*

A typical/particular/key example: *A typical example of megalopolis is New York.*

not least: *Parents have many things to consider, not least their children's health and safety.*

Most importantly/particularly: *Most importantly, parents need to think about their children's education and future prospects.*

as follows: *The problems associated with smoking in public places are as follows.*

in particular: *Regarding the benefits of doing daily exercises we can refer in particular to better physical condition and mental agility.*

a notable example/feature of: *A notable example of this is how teens are affected by their peers to turn to minor crimes while playing truant.*

Having finished the first body paragraph, count the words once or twice and write the number next to the paragraph. It should approximately be between 90 and 100 words. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on writing your first body paragraph.

The second body paragraph of a discussion essay normally shows the reasons why some other people reject the topic idea.

By contrast, the opponents of this point out that the children staying days and nights in the school for some months can seriously be prone to different psychological issues such as loneliness and depression. In addition, pupils suffering from solitude might lose their self-confidence to some extent. Personal instability can possibly be one of the grave problems irritating the children who have lost the support of their families even for a short period. Finally, the lack of security which is stemmed from being far from home can have a negative impact on their studies and consequently undermine their academic attainment.

In the second body paragraph you should act exactly like the first body paragraph, except that you should put yourself in the place of the people who deny the topic idea and think in a different way. You should give some reasons to support the opponents.

You can see that the paragraph starts with “*On the other hand*”, which implies that you are going to discuss about the other side of the argument. Instead of “*On the other hand*”, you could also use:

*On the negative side,
Turning to the other side of the argument/discussion/debate,
According to the opponents of this,
The opponents of... point out that...
In contrast,
On the contrary,
Conversely,*

Having finished the second body paragraph, count the words once or twice and write the number next to the paragraph. It should approximately be between 90 and 100 words. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on writing your second body paragraph.

Conclusion paragraph, in fact, is a short comparative summary of the main points you have written in two body paragraphs, drawing a comparison between the ideas of the proponents and opponents about the topic. Try to paraphrase the main points of the body paragraphs as much as possible

without changing the gist of them. This paragraph should be between 40 and 60 words. In case it is quite impossible to rewrite them in different words, bring them as they are to the ending paragraph.

All in all, personal autonomy, higher skills of communication, and being more focussed on school lessons could be the reasons why some believe in boarding schools, while others reject it for reasons such as vulnerability to abandonment and isolation which may lead to lower academic achievement.

These words and phrases could be used at the beginning of conclusion paragraph as well:

Overall,

After all,

To summarise/conclude/sum up/recap/recapitulate,

In summary/conclusion,

All things considered,

In short/brief/essence/any event/either case,

On the whole,

Altogether,

On balance,

By and large,

In a word,

As can be seen,

Generally speaking,

In the final analysis,

Given these points,

As has been noted,

For the most part,

In the long run,

As Shown above,

NB: It is important to use impersonal and tentative sentence structures in expressing the opinions you want to discuss about in your essay. Grammatically, as mentioned before, an impersonal or tentative sentence mostly starts with “preparatory it” or “there”. Here are some useful examples of this:

It may not be the case that living in countryside is necessarily better than experiencing city lifestyle.

It seems/appears that keeping animals in captivity can be both beneficial and detrimental to human life.

It would seem/appear that spending days and nights in boarding school may harm children psychologically and debilitate their social skills, which might affect their academic achievements negatively.

It is undoubtedly true that climate change is a result of the great melt happening in the Arctic and Antarctic due to increase in global temperature levels.

It is evident that gender inequality in workplace can partly result in social unrest.

There is some evidence that it is better for the members of police to be recruited from the local people.

There appears/seems to be some evidence linking dyslexia of left-handed people to their extraordinary abilities.

There is a tendency for gifted students to play truant if their school does not have the capacity to maintain the standards of providing them with educational facilities.

There is every likelihood that management problems are frequently linked with obesity, which shows people's irresistible tendency towards sedentary lifestyle and fast food.

When you have finished with writing the essay, you should have saved some time to go back and check your essay for possible grammatical and lexical errors. Try to focus on “articles”, “Countable and uncountable nouns”, “singular and plural verbs”, “linking words”, etc. (Appendix 3). You should not spend more than 5 minutes on this.

Finally, you add the numbers of words you have already written next to the paragraphs together to ensure that the whole essay is not less than 250 words.

A summary of Discussion essay

Brainstorming: prepare a rough plan in less than 5 minutes

Introduction: three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a general statement about the topic

a supporting sentence

the general plan of the essay

1st body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some reasons to support the proponents

2nd body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some reasons to support the opponents

Conclusion: two sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a summary of the two body paragraphs

a short impersonal recommendation

Final correction: correct the grammatical and lexical errors in less than 5 minutes

Model essay 1

Some employers offer their employees subsidised membership of gyms and sports clubs, believing that this will make the staff healthier and thus more effective at work. Other employers see no benefit in doing so.

Consider the arguments from both aspects of this possible debate, and reach a conclusion.

Physical condition of employees could undeniably have a direct impact on their mental health. This could affect both the levels of efficiency and productivity in the workplace. This essay will look at the arguments made by proponents and opponents of this and make a reasonable conclusion.

On the one hand, it can firstly be mentioned that being fit can increase energy, burn calories and assist the employees to be more focussed in the working space. This might lead to higher levels of productivity. Furthermore, by using gyms the workers can probably have a better work-life balance because of their healthier lifestyle and better mental state. This might be more motivating than, for example, receiving annual salary increments. Finally, being in good shape may result in a more effective communication with workmates which could enhance both the quality and quantity of work.

On the other hand, some employers think that daily workout can break the employees' concentration because it is time-consuming. Therefore, they prefer to spend their money more usefully and help their employees receive a better academic or vocational education in line with their working career. This may professionally safeguard both the employer and the employee. Additionally, this group of job owners think that it is better for the employers to spend their free time with their families after work and do not be disturbed by stressful public places such as gyms and sport clubs.

All in all, although allocating some resources to gyms and sports clubs subsidies seems to be immeasurable to some employers and such a lack of tangibility may be counted as a negative trait, health-related support can largely lead to higher productivity, efficacy and a better work-life balance.

(282 words)

Model essay 2

Should companies (businesses) ensure that they employ a quota (or a fixed percentage) of women in all jobs, or is this an impractical concept?

Discuss both sides of this debate, and reach a conclusion based on your

own opinion.

It is a fact that inequality between men and women in workplace remains to be a widely-controversial issue throughout the international market. Some believe that women could equally be employed compared to men. Others refuse to accept this idea. This essay will look at the both sides of the argument and draw a conclusion.

The proponents of this idea say that hiring women to a remarkable extent can help decrease the level of inequality between men and women in the work space. Additionally, the advocates of equality between females and males at work think that it might be helpful to increase the family income, which can probably lead to a higher standard of living. They believe also that having equal job opportunities to men can in large promote a sense of self-esteem and independence in women, which can possibly stabilise both their family and social roles in the fabric of the society.

On the other hand, the opponents of this remind us that women don't probably fit physically or psychologically into many jobs available in the market. For instance, most women normally don't fit the description necessary to work in a mine. Furthermore, male job seekers, in the meantime, may not be completely able to carry out a job such as tapestry which appears to be more womanly. It can finally be said that hiring a fixed percentage of women for specific sorts of jobs may harm their personal interests on the type of job they choose or have the talent to do.

On the whole, some may argue that recruiting a quota of women on a national scale may alleviate the gender inequality in the work place, increase their earnings and create equal job opportunities, however, it is undeniable, at the same time, that this might not be physically and mentally suitable for the whole society and can be bad for the dynamism of both women and men in the working environment.

(323 words)

Model essay 3

It is sometimes said that the countryside offers a high quality of life, especially for families.

What are the arguments for and against families choosing to live and work in the countryside, for example as farmers? What is your own view about this?

The hectic pace of life and congested roads causing air and noise pollution

in the cities are a small part of massive problems that citizens are constantly confronted with. Such problematic issues may have pushed some to think that living in countryside may be healthier and more peaceful than city lifestyle. However, many people disagree with this. This essay will look at the both sides of the argument and attempt to draw a reasonable conclusion.

Based on what the supporters of this idea believe in, people who miss rustic charm of life in the back of beyond may find themselves socially isolated and deprived of the amenities existing in urban areas. They might feel alone, since a quiet backwater can be a result of rural depopulation, meaning that few people live in remote villages. In addition, those who prefer to live in the middle of nowhere should know that they might have less access to job opportunities, face more limited future prospects, and therefore live in severe poverty.

On the contrary, it seems to be really rewarding to live in the countryside which is a cornucopia of pleasures and delights such as varies landscape, dense forests, vast meadows, and gentle rolling hills. Furthermore, country dwellers appear to be capable of creating an independent way of living both economically and socially. They are able to produce their own crops and secure their lives against the harmful economic crisis the city inhabitants might continuously be exposed to. Finally, it has to be said that recent technological progressions have made us capable of remote learning and viewing and being steadily in contact with ongoing city life and culture.

In brief, new advances in technology has caused many villagers or countryside dwellers to have access to all the information to build up a high quality life where they live, while the situation for city inhabitants is getting worse despite the wide range of facilities available to them.

(323 word)

Model essay 4

Some people believe that all children should have a pet or even an animal to look after. Other people disagree, however, saying that this depends on a child's circumstances.

Consider these opposing views, and give your opinion.

Nowadays, the role of pets is becoming increasingly pivotal in our lifestyles. Children living in close families are probably more prone to certain restrictions now than a century ago, and having an animal at home may aid to compensate for such limiting impacts. Some support this opinion, while

others reject it. This essay will look at both sides of the argument and give a concluding view.

Those who are in favour of children being constantly in contact with domestic animals firmly believe that it can be an opportunity for them to gain a basic biological knowledge about flora and fauna. Additionally, being a playmate for our children, pets, for instance cats, could possibly give them a sense of affinity with nature and have, therefore, a deep respect for wildlife when grown up. As a consequence of such a close relationship, children may feel more self-possessed and extrovert.

Conversely, according to the opponents of this, pets and animals may be a potential source of diseases like cat-scratch disease in case there is no permanent and appropriate hygiene. Furthermore, it is argued that children who spend a lot of time with home animals may come up with lower quality of educational career. Finally, it must be said that the price of maintaining a pet, for example a dog, may be prohibitively high for less better-off families. Therefore the pet may suffer malnutrition.

Overall, although the opponents of keeping pets or animals at home think that it can hygienically be problematic for families and also it can draw our offspring's attention from their studies, I believe that people having been in touch with domestic animals show less misconduct and have more understanding attitude towards nature as an adult member of society.

(288 words)

Model essay 5

Some people believe that sport is an essential part of school life for children, while others feel it should be purely optional.

Discuss these opposing views and give your own opinion.

In our modern world, sport can probably be a way of addressing grave issues such as unbalanced and unhealthy lifestyle. It is argued that school as children's second home can play a pivotal role towards changing sport into a habitual activity if it is an essential part of curriculum. Some may disagree with this idea. I will look at both sides of the argument and draw a reasonable conclusion.

On the one hand, many believe that sport should be compulsory in schools, since this can make it a part of children's future life. Being a little challenging at the beginning, habitual sport activities can result in students' better health and provide them with a long-term balance in their way of

living. Furthermore, if children join sports groups such as a football team, the possibility of turning to existing delinquencies such as drugs will probably be curtailed. In addition, they might improve their teamwork skills while being a member of a sports team.

On the other hand, there is an argument that it is not a good idea to push the students, especially those who are not sporty, to have regular workouts in school. This may have negative psychological effects on them. Therefore, it seems to be more logical if schools let the students choose, all by themselves, to get involved in sports lessons whenever they prefer. Such a freedom of choice may lead to a strong relationship between the school and the pupils. This, as a consequence, can secure children's independence and strength in the future.

Taken as a whole, although many people hold the view that sport must be a crucial part of students' life, I firmly believe that we should give them a chance of picking what they are really interested in and made for.
(297 words)

Model essay 6

Some people feel that it is always wrong to keep animals in captivity, for instance in zoos. Other people say that there are benefits for the animals and for humans.

Discuss both sides of the debate, and give your personal view.

Since the outset of modern life, animal captivity has increasingly been changed into a controversial issue. Some people are against it, while others think that it can be beneficial. I will look at the both sides of the argument and draw a reasonable conclusion.

On the one hand, the opponents of keeping animals in close spaces believe that it can definitely damage the ecosystem, since we take these living creatures out of their natural cycle and introduce them forcefully into an artificial habitat. Furthermore, they feel that the imprisonment of animals, even in a vast and spacious natural park, seems to be against the animal rights. Finally, it is believed that we must stop keeping animals in captivity, because it might concurrently change into a more dangerous habit for the future generations.

On the other hand, there is an argument that having a variety of animal species, for example in zoos, could help remind us that we are also a part of nature. The more modern human beings get acquainted with animals, the

closer they will feel to the nature and the more deeply they will respect it. In addition, these days, it is extremely difficult for the young people to travel and visit closely the wildlife. Keeping animals in manmade locations can give them a chance to be in contact with the animals. This might lead to a sense of closeness between the humans and animals.

All things considered, despite all the efforts of the animal rights supporters, I believe that it is not possible to separate humans from the wildlife. Although our lifestyle has, to some extent, widened the gap between the citizens and animals, still a lot of city residents have sheer tenacity to keep their own animals forging a really strong relationship with them.

(298 words)

Model essay 7

Some people think that boarding schools are an excellent option for children, while other people disagree for a number of reasons.

Consider both sides of this debate and reach a conclusion.

It is often said that pupils can benefit from boarding schools. However, the issue is not entirely straight forward, and arguments can also be made against. This essay will discuss the debate and draw a conclusion.

On the one hand, those who espouse boarding school as the best choice for children cite the various benefits it can bring to them. These range from personal independence to being more concentrated on school lessons. Furthermore, based on the viewpoint of boarding school supporters, students in such a school can possibly gain a sense of self-control and make their attempt to take everything under control in their personal life. Another argument is that children will get independently experienced in forging stable relationships through communication with their schoolmates.

By contrast, the opponents of this point out that the children staying days and nights in the school for some months can seriously be prone to different psychological issues such as loneliness and depression. In addition, pupils suffering from solitude might lose their self-confidence to some extent. Personal instability can possibly be one of the grave problems irritating the children who have lost the support of their families even for a short period. Finally, the lack of security which is stemmed from being far from home can have a negative impact on their studies and consequently undermine their academic attainment.

All in all, personal autonomy, higher skills of communication, and being

more focussed on school lessons could be the reasons why some believe in boarding schools, while others reject it for reasons such as vulnerability to abandonment and isolation which may lead to lower academic achievement.
(268 words)

Model essay 8

Some people think that young people should follow traditions of the society, while other people think that young people should be free to behave as individuals.

Discuss both views and give your opinion.

The confrontation between tradition and modernity might go back to the advent of technology and the industrialisation of human societies. Some people think that the youth should follow their traditional culture and refuse to accept modern values while others believe that they should have the freedom of choice. This essay will look at this grave challenge and attempt to draw a reasonable conclusion.

On the one hand, the supporters of traditional way of thinking think, firstly, that it seems better for the younger generations to live a traditional lifestyle in order to remain unharmed by the detriments of modern life such as stress and depression. Secondly, the youth can uphold their long-standing cultural traditions like wearing local costumes and performing traditional rituals and songs for the purpose of strengthening their cultural values rooted from their origins and sharing them with the whole world. Thirdly, traditions such as folkloric music, literature and visual arts are usually so rich that they might help empower family and social ties and gives us a lot of remembrances.

By contrast, the opponents of following the cultural traditions say that, first and foremost, young people will not be circumscribed by traditional thought if they adopt a modern way of living and accept the newly-established norms, meaning that traditions normally impose restrictions on the youth which may not allow them to broaden their horizons and be innovative through their ground-breaking creativity using new technological advances. Furthermore, they might experience a sort of freedom from restrictive traditional family values such as old-fashion matrimonies usually arranged by parents for the benefit of the whole family. Obviously, in modern lifestyle, marriage is mostly based on common personal interests and devotion.

Overall, although some people think that traditions may psychologically safeguard the youth, remind them of their roots and help them build up strong

bonds with their family members, modern life can, in my view, assist them to feel free from the limits of traditionalism, take their lives in their own hands and use their creative abilities to enrich the lives of other human beings.

(344 words)

Model essay 9

Some people think developing countries should invite large foreign companies to open offices and factories to help with their economic growth. Other people think developing countries should keep large companies out and develop local companies instead.

Discuss both views and give your own opinion.

Nowadays, some developing countries make attempts to raise the interest of foreign investors to start new production companies in their countries. Some think that this might assist their economy to grow, while others refute this and say that they need to avoid direct foreign investment. This essay will scrutinise both of these views and try to draw a logical conclusion.

On the one hand, the proponents of direct foreign investment think, primarily, that it can lead the whole country to a sort of economic development stimulation, meaning that it might provide foreign investors and local industry with numerous benefits such as easier production process and more cost-effective sales management. Furthermore, this can result in more employment through creating new jobs opportunities. The more foreign companies come to establish businesses inside a developing country, the more jobs will be available for local job seekers. Finally, foreign investment in a country which endeavours to establish and improve its infrastructure can definitely increase the national income. As a result of such an increment in income, economic growth is spurred and the wider economy experiences an economic boost.

On the other hand, the opponents of foreign direct investment believe that this sort of putting resources into an economy might act as a hindrance to the domestic investment, meaning that the investor's home country might be deprived of its own resources and probably end up in economic recession. Moreover, the resources invested in a developing country may sometimes be banned due to new rules or even ideological tendencies in the host country, which can stop some investors to allocate their money even to some market niches. Finally, some developing countries might be worried about foreign direct investment, since it might result in a sort of modern day economic

colonialism through foreign businesses' financial or even political exploitations.

Overall, notwithstanding avoiding foreign direct investment may cause hindrance to the domestic investment, banning the invested resources and a type of modern day economic colonialism, it can, in my view, stimulate economic development on a national scale, motivate entrepreneurs to create new jobs and aid the whole country to develop its infrastructure towards economic boost.

(357 words)

Practice tasks

NB: Try to use the topic-based vocabulary and collocations (*appendix 2*) at the end of the book to answer each given topic question.

Topic 1: work

Completing university education is thought by some to be the best way to get a good job. On the other hand, other people think getting experience and developing soft skills is more important.

Discuss both sides and give your opinion.

Topic 2: countryside

Some people think that it is better for children to grow up in the countryside than in a big city. Others disagree with this idea.

Discuss the both sides of the debate and draw a conclusion.

Topic 3: family

Some people think that the role of parents is to discipline their children and teach them about right and wrong. Other people consider that the main responsibility of parents is to nurture their children and provide them with a safe environment to grow up in.

Discuss both sides and give your opinion.

Topic 4: sport

Some people think that sport teaches children how to compete while others believe that children learn how to work in a team with others rather than against them.

Discuss both views and give your opinion.

Topic 5: global challenges, environment and species

A growing number of people feel that animals should not be exploited by people and they should have the same rights as humans, while others argue that human must employ animals to satisfy their various needs, including uses for food and research.

Discuss both sides and give your opinion.

Topic 6: education

Some people feel that parents have the greatest influence on their child's academic development, while others believe that a child's teacher has more influence.

Discuss both sides and give your opinion.

UNIT

2: Opinion Essay

“*Opinion*” essays ask you to present your own viewpoint about the given topic and the reasons for your way of thinking.

An “*Opinion*” essay question generally gives an opinion for or against something and asks you to give your own viewpoint and clarify your position through some compelling reasons and relevant examples, for instance:

In recent years, many governments have brought in laws to ban smoking in public places, such as bars, restaurants and offices.

To what extent do you agree or disagree with banning smoking in public places.

Opinion topic questions may be presented in different ways such as:

Do you agree or disagree with this statement, idea, proposal, assessment or prediction?

To what extent do you agree or disagree with...?

Some observers say that... Other people say that... Where do you stand on this debate?

How far do you share this viewpoint?

Why do you think...? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? ... Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

Do you agree with this opinion?

Do you think that...?

Do you agree?

In this example, you should hold a position about “*banning smoking in public places*” and give reasons why you take such a position.

An “*opinion*” essay usually consists of four paragraphs. You should normally introduce the topic through the 1st paragraph, i.e. introduction, give some reasons with brief examples for your viewpoint in the 2nd body

paragraph, write a concession paragraph in order to give the viewpoint opposite to yours to create a more balanced essay, and finally, summarise the two body paragraphs in the conclusion paragraph, i.e. the last paragraph, preferably in a tentative way.

Before you begin to write your essay, you should spend less than 5 minutes to brainstorm some reasons for the second body paragraph you are going to write, and also a short concession paragraph. To brainstorm your supporting reasons you can jot them down in the form of key words and phrases somewhere on your paper as follows:

1st body paragraph:

harm their health/pernicious effects on the individuals

children and teens

first-hand smokers' disorderly conduct

2nd body paragraph (concession):

against human rights of freedom

Contrary to “*Discussion*” essays in which you give your viewpoint in the conclusion paragraph, in “*Opinion*” essays you give your opinion in the introduction paragraph, i.e. the first paragraph. The introduction paragraph is usually made up of three sentences. The first sentence is a general statement about the topic or you can paraphrase the topic question:

These days, smoking in public places is gradually being contemplated as an illegal activity, and it may eventually be deemed to be a crime by the governments.

The second sentence should support your first general statement and at the same time add a new point to it. It can indirectly prepare the reader’s mind to read and absorb your own viewpoint which is going to be directly expressed in the third sentence:

Many people think that banning smoking in open social spaces can be advantageous at large.

The third sentence should be about your personal viewpoint and show your plan. This is the key sentence of the first paragraph which will help the examiner understand whether you have grasped the type of topic question

you are going to answer to or not:

I firmly agree with this idea and in this essay I will support my opinion with examples.

You can write the final sentence of the introduction paragraph with different words, for example:

I strongly agree with this and this essay will support my opinion with relevant examples.

This seems, in my view, to be practicable and in this essay I make an attempt to give reasons for my viewpoint.

I firmly believe that smoking could be severely detrimental to our social life and this essay will support my viewpoint.

This essay will look at this phenomenon and have a close look at the opposing viewpoint before drawing a conclusion.

I will attempt to give reasons for my personal viewpoint and draw a reasonable conclusion.

This essay will look at the reasons for this and reach a conclusion.

To express your personal view, you can also use phrases such as:

In my opinion/view,

According to me,

To me,

From my perspective/point of view,

It seems to me that...

I am concerned that...

I personally think/feel that...

I believe that...

To my way of thinking,

I am of the opinion that...

It appears to me that...

I think/suppose/realize

I understand/imagine/feel...

I tend to personally agree/disagree with...

Once you are finished with the introduction paragraph, you should count the words quickly and write it down next to the paragraph. It should be between 40 and 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on writing and counting the words of the whole paragraph.

Now you should refer to your supporting reasons you just wrote them down and try to expand them in a structurally reasonable way. You already know that linking words such as “*first and foremost*”, “*in addition*”, “*furthermore*” and “*in other words*”, etc. have the capability of forming the main skeleton of the body paragraph you are going to write. Be careful to use the linking words exactly where they can help clarify the grammatical structure as well as transition from one reason to another.

***First and foremost**, smoking at a place where people go and come can harm their health to some extent. **In addition**, it can have pernicious effects on the individuals who enjoy their leisure time, for example, in a restaurant. **Furthermore**, children and teens who accompany their families in such occasions; can easily copy the first-hand smokers’ disorderly conduct. **In other words**, smoking openly in places where families and friends get together for social purposes, could definitely have negative effects on youngsters and even change into their future habit. Increase in the number of smokers would possibly be an insurmountable problem arising from smoking in public locations.*

Count the words immediately after wrapping up the paragraph and jot the number down next to the first body paragraph. It should not be less than 100 words. You should have spent 15 minutes on writing this paragraph.

Now you need to be quick and write the concession paragraph, which is normally shorter than the first body paragraph. In this paragraph, you should write briefly about the viewpoint which is opposite to yours giving a short example, and try to reject it in one or two sentences. Concession paragraph is really paramount in an opinion essay, since it can give your essay a sense of balance which is extremely important for the examiner and will increase your band score.

***On the other hand**, there is an argument that enforcing anti-smoking laws by the governments against the smokers, **for instance**, in bars or offices, can be considered as an action against their human rights of freedom. Such an*

*anti-humanistic reaction may result in imposing other types of constraints on human beings, which could probably decrease the number of outgoing citizens who join public venues for smoking. This might **consequently** lead some lucrative and burgeoning businesses to take a nosedive.*

The number of words in a concession paragraph should be approximately between 70 and 90. Jot it down next to the paragraph and move on to the conclusion. You should have spent about 30 minutes of your time.

The conclusion paragraph normally gives the gist of the two body paragraphs. It consists of 2 or 3 long and short sentences and is approximately around 40 to 60 words. You should try to paraphrase everything as much as possible. For example, in the following conclusion paragraph, the word “*proscribing*” is used instead of “*banning*”, “*inhuman*” is a synonym for “*anti-humanistic*”, “*offspring*” (is a plural noun here) is another word for “*children*”, and “*public spaces*” is almost synonymous with “*public or social places*”.

***All in all, although** proscribing smoking in public spaces is considered to be inhuman and rather harsh by human activists, **I believe that** it can be beneficial both to adults and their offspring. **Obviously**, whether or not we as a society have the willpower, sheer tenacity and perseverance to carry out what is necessary remains to be seen.*

NB: You need to learn paraphrasing skills not to repeat the same vocabulary and collocations all the time, although you might as well remember that sometimes it is impossible to paraphrase everything and we have to use the same words and phrases used in the main paragraphs.

A summary of Opinion essay

Brainstorming: prepare a rough plan in less than 5 minutes

Introduction: three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a general statement about the topic

a supporting sentence (your viewpoint)

the general plan of the essay

1st body paragraph: (100-110 words/15 minutes)

some reasons to support your viewpoint

2nd body paragraph (concession): (70-90 words/5 minutes)

give the opponents' view in brief

reject their opinion shortly

Conclusion: two sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a summary of the two body paragraphs

a short impersonal recommendation

Final correction: correct the grammatical and lexical errors in less than 5 minutes

Model essay 1

Some observers say that police officers should be recruited from the communities where they work, so that they have local knowledge. Other people say that this is unnecessary, or even undesirable.

Where do you stand on this debate? Is local knowledge essential in modern policing?

It seems to be vital that the members of the police be conscripted if they belong to the local community where they are going to start their work. I strongly agree with this and this essay will support my opinion with relevant examples.

In the first place, one way of tightening controls on local crimes is the conscription of local applicants who know the area and its residents to a very great degree. This may equally minimise the risk to which the police force might be exposed and ease the way to satisfy the requirements of the law. The police officers, in addition, who are more familiar with the region they are working in can significantly gain detailed information and evidence against the infringements of the regulations and refer it to the court of law. This means that they may act more successfully to make the people who flout the rules deliberately abide by the law, help decrease the soaring crime rates more realistically, avoid the unreliable evidence or trumped-up charges which appear to be quite common, and even make an attempt to lessen the level of extenuating circumstances by overturning the verdict in the court of law.

On the other hand, there is an argument that the local police members might be at the risk of bribery because of their over-familiarity with the fabric of the local society. Although this might be true, it is undeniable that their familiarity with the local network of criminals may lead to more efficient timing and budgeting in the process of law enforcement.

As can be seen above, though some consider the recruitment of local officers to be totally inessential, it appears, in my view, that it could definitely be beneficial to the whole security system and its local branches.
(298 words)

Model essay 2

Healthcare should always be funded by governments, and it should always be free for people to use.

To what extent do you agree or disagree with this idea?

Healthcare along with national insurance can definitely be a key to have a healthy society and therefore psychologically better people who are able to work more efficiently and help the whole society experience more prosperity. Some believe that healthcare should completely be financially supported by the government. This seems, in my view, to be impracticable and in this essay I make an attempt to give reasons for my viewpoint.

First of all, it appears to be impossible for the government to finance the public healthcare because of its scarcity of income resources. If the government decides to finance the whole healthcare system, it has to remarkably increase its earnings through getting involved in various economic zones. This may lead to mushrooming governmental organisations which do not generally seem to be beneficial to a modern country from macroeconomic point of view. Furthermore, the price of medicine and medication in the market which has been ailing for some time seems to be soaring day by day, which makes it impossible for the government to raise annual funds and provide, finally, the whole fabric of the society with free healthcare.

Although some people firmly believe that the government should financially support the healthcare system for the benefit of the entire society, it appears to be impossible regarding the current economic climate.

Given these points, it has to be said that totally governmental healthcare might be impractical because of the limited money the government makes and prohibitively high cost of medicine and medication. Perhaps it is logical for the government to put a part of the responsibility towards a wide-ranging healthcare system on the shoulders of private sector.

(274 words)

Model essay 3

All children should learn to speak a foreign language as soon as possible they start school.

How far do you agree with this proposal? How important is it for a child to learn a foreign language?

It is universally accepted that knowing at least a foreign language is vital for all the children having started their educational career both for their current social entity and their future prospects. I firmly believe that the youth should learn a language to build up a socially and economically better life and this essay will support my viewpoint.

First and foremost, having learned a foreign language, children will undeniably have a better chance to broaden their educational and professional horizons to a great extent. The European students who are obliged to master at least two foreign languages are good examples of this. Furthermore, those youngsters who speak and write in one or two other languages might be successful in case they decide to go abroad for study or work. For instance, being familiar with foreign languages means that they can do research and gain information from a variety of resources other than their mother language. In the meantime, every language a child master could open a new door to widen their knowledge and experience and have a deeper understanding of the world they are living in.

It may be true that learning languages incurs additional costs for the families and can be in some countries prohibitively expensive, it is apparently indispensable to children's future success and cannot be ignored at all.

To recap, the ability to use a foreign language, in my view, might ease the way for the children to achieve success academically as well as financially, letting them enhance their understanding of our global village.

(258 words)

Model essay 4

In recent years, many governments have brought in laws to ban smoking in public places, such as bars, restaurants and offices.

To what extent do you agree or disagree with banning smoking in public places?

These days, smoking in public places is gradually being contemplated as an illegal activity, and it may eventually be deemed to be a crime by the governments. Many people think that banning smoking in open social spaces can be advantageous at large. I firmly agree with this idea and in this essay I will support my opinion with examples.

First and foremost, smoking at a place where people go and come can harm their health to some extent. In addition, it can have pernicious effects on the individuals who enjoy their leisure time, for example, in a restaurant. Furthermore, children and teens who accompany their families in such occasions; can easily copy the first-hand smokers' disorderly conduct. In other words, smoking openly in places where families and friends get together for social purposes, could definitely have negative effects on youngsters and even change into their future habit. Increase in the number of

smokers would possibly be an insurmountable problem arising from smoking in public locations.

On the other hand, there is an argument that enforcing anti-smoking laws by the governments against the smokers, for instance, in bars or offices, can be considered as an action against their human rights of freedom. Such an anti-humanistic reaction may result in imposing other types of constraints on human beings, which could probably decrease the number of outgoing citizens who join public venues for smoking. This might consequently lead some lucrative and burgeoning businesses to take a nosedive.

All in all, although proscribing smoking in public spaces is considered to be inhuman and rather harsh by human activists, I believe that it can be beneficial both to adults and their offspring. Obviously, whether or not we as a society have the willpower, sheer tenacity and perseverance to carry out what is necessary remains to be seen.

(301 words)

Model essay 5

Unemployment remains the biggest challenge to school-leavers in most countries.

How far do you agree with this assessment? What other challenges face young people today?

One of the major challenges that modern societies irresistibly face is the unemployment of the young people being graduated, particularly when there is a mounting economic recession. However, in my view, there are other challenges which seem to be more demanding than youth unemployment. This essay will look at this phenomenon and have a close look at the other challenging issues.

It is obvious that the young people who don't succeed to get appropriate jobs after their graduation can face serious difficulties regarding their living standards. These pressing matters can be alleviated by producing more jobs and opportunities for the youth through suitable economic initiatives to increase the national production level and consequently decrease the rate of joblessness. It should be mentioned that there are other thorny problems which cannot be alleviated that easy.

Turning to the other challenges, the challenging issue of brain drain is of paramount importance. At the time of economic hardship, young people tend to migrate and work in other more economically prosperous countries to have

a better life and experience financial prosperity. Furthermore, the youth might face global hazards such as international hostilities ending up with disastrous wars, contagious illnesses and environmental footprints by uncontrolled industrial activities, which are generally rooted from political disputes and corruption and climate change.

All in all, it seems acceptable that youth unemployment may be a really problematic issue to deal with, however, there are more serious ramifications such as brain drain and other fatal risks which appear to be insurmountable to a great extent both for the governments and their people.

(262 words)

Model essay 6

Everybody should donate a fixed amount of their income to support charity.

How far do you share this viewpoint?

It is an undeniable fact that charity companies and organisations play a pivotal role in different social situations. They can be a contributing factor in humans' contemporary life and we should pay a monthly or annual amount to support them. I will attempt to give reasons for my personal viewpoint and draw a reasonable conclusion.

First and foremost, charity organisations can make the distribution of wealth more balanced, meaning that they can take the money from the rich and give it to the poorer parts of the society to bring more balance to our social life. This will aid to back the destitute people and create a sense of social justice to some extent. Take the UK as an example, which gets behind the poor both nationally and internationally. In addition, the empowerment of charity institutes might lead to a higher level of education. For instance, in many developed countries such institutes make serious attempts to provide the talented students or professionals with financial resources to build up their future academic or vocational careers. Finally, it is obvious that charity activities can be carried out in a variety of areas such as hygiene, life-threatening illnesses, culture and art and help tackle certain grave issues.

It is true that it is better for us to rely on more efficient social and economic systems than only charity organisations to address thorny problems such as poverty. However, it is undeniable that charity companies could in part assist to curtail the level of deprivation.

To sum up, it is clear that the way forward to overcome our social

problems is firstly to find the fundamental and long-term solutions, and then support charity companies constantly by donating a portion of our income to give the impoverished families a hand.

(294 words)

Model essay 7

The Internet will never replace traditional course books in schools.

How far do you agree with this prediction?

The Internet appears to be of paramount importance in educational system, however, traditional course books, in my view, still seem to be the most effective way of teaching. This essay will look at the reasons for this and draw a conclusion.

First and foremost, traditional course books still are the main cause of improvement in academic attainment, since they are designed by educational experts to help students absorb more knowledge and get ready for the exams through constant evaluation. Furthermore, these course books can lead students to learn and master their group work strategies, and do research or assimilate knowledge more independently. This means that study skills have been involved in the methodology of these books. The Internet, for instance, can be mentioned as one of these skills while it might aid students to collect the data they need more quickly and efficiently if being used constantly under teacher's supervision.

Although it is claimed that the Internet can be a powerful support for the adults to gain knowledge and collect essential information, it is indisputable that school age learners don't seem to be prepared to experience such a process because they don't appear to have the capabilities to seek the accurate and reliable sources and leave the inessential and inaccurate data behind.

All in all, the Internet as a modern facility can ease the way for teachers to increase the quality of their lessons, though traditional course books still are indispensable to the educational systems and remain to be pivotal to the success of both teachers and their pupils.

(259 words)

Model essay 8

Governments should spend money on railways rather than roads.

To what extent do you agree or disagree with this statement?

Although building roads is more important for many governments

nowadays comparing to railways, I believe that putting more money resources to build high quality railways might be more efficient both for the citizens and the economy. This essay will make an attempt to justify this and draw a reasonable conclusion.

First and foremost, the government should allot money to railways because they seem to be faster and more time-saving when it comes to the transfer of passengers and commodities. The reason for this is that railways do not suffer from traffic jams which can hamper their movement to a great extent. Furthermore, the authorities can boost the level of travel safety by allotting more resources to expand railways as much as possible since there have been less accidents reported for the people and businesses that use railways as their mode of transportation. Reportedly, road travellers experience thousands of accidents per day across the world. For example, Iranians who use roads to commute have more than five thousand accidents every day. Finally, trains are more cost-effective in comparison to gas-guzzling cars and buses consuming massive amounts of fuels and leading to more air pollution in megacities.

Admittedly, some believe that there are not enough spaces in the cities, especially in inner-cities, for building railways, nonetheless, new technology has given us the possibility of building them not on the roads and streets but above the ground in order to decrease the level of traffic in overcrowded areas.

All in all, notwithstanding the lack of enough space in metropolises to create effective railways, it seems that the governments can help people travel faster and cheaper by providing them with more trains and giving them the chance to enjoy a remarkably higher level of safety.

(289 words)

Model essay 9

The advantages of English spreading as a global language will continue to outweigh the disadvantages.

To what extent do you agree or disagree?

English language, as a lingua franca, is certainly one of the most widely spoken languages in the world. The benefits of learning English, in my opinion, are far more than its drawbacks. This essay will attempt to give reasons for why this international language is more beneficial than detrimental and try to draw a reasonable conclusion.

In the first place, English learners might have better future prospects and increase their employment opportunities if they learn to understand English well and speak it fluently. Undeniably, fluency and expert linguistic skills may put certain job seekers at a distinct advantage and assist them to get better jobs in the market. Furthermore, tourists who have learnt English can travel much more conveniently and might have the possibility to communicate more effectively. In other words, tourists with a rather high command of the English language have a better chance to interact well with other nationalities. In addition, most high-level academics speak English and write their essays and articles in this language. It can also be said that most highly prestigious academic books and dissertations are written in English in order to help university instructors and their students across the world understand the most recent advances in the world of science and technology. Finally, it should be mentioned that English language is quite necessary for technology users in order, for instance, to understand software programmes and manuals of different devices which are mostly written in English.

Admittedly, although some people believe that English language shouldn't be used by an overwhelming majority of various nationalities, since it seems difficult to be learnt well, it is obvious that a great deal of material on the Internet and many sources of information are all in English and everyone needs to understand English in order not to jeopardise the chance of forging a better communication with the inhabitants of the global village.

To sum up, notwithstanding disagreement with learning and using English as a lingua franca, it is paramount to remember that it might provide the jobless with better job opportunities, tourists with more convenient travel and communication, academics with a more efficient way of sharing their new ideas and technology users with a better understanding of digital world.

(370 words)

Model essay 10

Some people think newspaper is the most effective way to obtain the latest information because it has more influence than other forms of media.

Do you agree or disagree?

The media as a modern way of informing people about social, cultural and political news and events have been playing a remarkable role in our lives. Newspaper, in my view, has played the key role in disseminating information

and this essay will attempt to give reasons for this and draw a logical conclusion.

Regarding the reasons why newspaper is the greatest source of information, it can, firstly, be said that newspaper is light and easily portable, meaning that it can be read conveniently in any situation, for example, while travelling by bus, taking a break in the workplace and even before going to bed. Secondly, people have access to newspapers almost everywhere. Electronic newspaper is even more available than the traditional ones through our smart phones, tablets or similar devices. Digital newspaper has increased significantly the availability of the latest news in circulation for everyone across the world. Thirdly, newspaper is a rather cheap way of receiving useful new information and nearly every member of the society can afford to buy it on a daily or weekly basis.

Admittedly, although some believe firmly that newspaper is not reliable source of news because of false information being published from time to time, it should be said that newspaper contains useful information such as weather report, sports events, business news, local news as well as world news and entertaining things like puzzles, stories and crosswords. Newspaper is also ecofriendly and easy to recycle.

Overall, newspapers have sometimes been accused of sharing wrong information with their readers, nonetheless, they provide the fabric of society with accurate information on a large scale as well due to reasons such as its cheap price, wide availability and light weight.

(283 words)

Practice tasks

NB: Try to use the topic-based vocabulary and collocations (*appendix 2*) at the end of the book to answer each given topic question.

Topic 1: work

Computers and modems have made it possible for office workers to do much of their work from home instead of working in offices every day. Working from home should be encouraged as it is good for workers and employers.

Do you agree or disagree?

Topic 2: countryside

It is better for children to grow up in the countryside than in a big city.

Do you agree or disagree?

Topic 3: family

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement?

Parents are the best teachers. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

Topic 4: sport

It is generally discussed among the public that extreme sports such as sky diving and rock-climbing should be banned.

To what extent do you agree or disagree?

Topic 5: global challenges, environment and species

Nowadays environmental problems are too big to be managed by individual persons or individual countries. In other words, it is an international problem.

To what extent do you agree or disagree?

Topic 6: education

The advantages of English spreading as a global language will continue to outweigh the disadvantages.

To what extent do you agree or disagree?

A comparison between “Discussion” & “Opinion” essays

“*Discussion*” essays focus on other people’s arguments, while “*Opinion*” essays are about your own ability to show logical reasoning facing a global idea, therefore the grammatical structure and vocabulary we use would partly be different. In “*Discussion*” essays you should give your viewpoint in the final paragraph, i.e. the conclusion, while in “*Opinion*” essays you should share your viewpoint in the first paragraph, i.e. the introduction.

“*Discussion*” and “*Opinion*” essays normally are made up of four paragraphs, but they are structurally different. In a “*Discussion*” essay you should spend the two body paragraphs to speak about two sides of the debate. In the first body paragraph, you should discuss about the supporters of the idea of the topic question and give some reasons with brief examples to justify their way of thinking. In the second body paragraph, you should turn to the other side of the debate and give some reasons on behalf of the people who are on the opposite side of the discussion.

In an “*Opinion*” essay, however, after you present your viewpoint in the introduction, you use the first body paragraph to give some reasons to justify your own opinion about the idea of topic question. Furthermore, you should write a short additional paragraph, called concession, to describe the viewpoint which is opposite to yours and give your essay a sense of balance. Concession paragraph helps avoid absolutism in “*Opinion*” essay.

	<i>Discussion essay</i>	<i>Opinion essay</i>
Introduction	<i>a brief explanation of the opposite view</i>	<i>give your viewpoint</i>
1st body paragraph	<i>discuss the first view (give reasons with examples)</i>	<i>reasons and examples to support your opinion</i>
2nd body paragraph	<i>discuss second view (give reasons with examples)</i>	<i>opposite opinion and its rejection (Concession)</i>
Conclusion	<i>write a short summary and give your viewpoint</i>	<i>a short summary</i>

UNIT

3: Problem and Solution Essay

In this type of essay, a phenomenon or a fact, normally related to contemporary life, is introduced by the topic. You are, then, asked to write about the possible problems it can create as well as the possible solutions you may suggest addressing those problems. The phenomena which could be given in a “*Problem and solution*” essay may vary from large cities and governmental authorities to education and environment. You are expected to express and expand your ideas in grammatically and lexically proper English. You are not expected to use very complicated academic vocabulary or extremely complex sentences. On the other hand, oversimplification does not seem to be appropriate. You should have a rather academic tone, accurate grammar and relevant vocabulary to get a higher band score.

“*Problem and solution*” topic questions might be given in a variety of forms such as:

What problems does/can this/it cause/create and what could be done/can we do to solve them?

What are the most significant of these problems? How can these problems be tackled?

What problems does it create/may arise from this and how can these problems be reduced/tackled/solved/addressed?

In many countries, there is problem with... What measures could be taken to prevent this?

What dangerous situations can this lead to? What solutions/ways/means can you suggest to deal with these problems?

... is a major and controversial issue. What problems may it cause and how can these problems be alleviated?

What solutions can you suggest to deal with this situation?

What are the problems associated with this? How can they be prevented? How could/can this issue/problem be tackled by...?

What problems has this caused? What solutions can you suggest to this issue?

The following topic question is about the daily problems rooted from

metropolises and how these problems can be solved:

People who live in large cities face a range of problems in their daily life. What are the most significant of these problems? How can these problems be tackled?

It can be seen that the topic question asks you to write about the “*problems*” that the inhabitants of large cities experience every day and how these problems can be solved or “*tackled*”. In fact, you should think of some problems regarding living in a metropolitan area and some possible solutions to these problems.

A “*Problem and solution*” essay is normally written in four paragraphs. You should use the 1st paragraph, i.e. introduction, to write briefly about the topic. Then, in the 1st body paragraph, you should write about some problems and exemplify them shortly, and in the 2nd body paragraph, you should give some solutions to the problems you have already presented. Finally, you should give a summary of the two body paragraphs in the conclusion paragraph in a tentative and impersonal way.

Firstly, you should spend less than 5 minutes to brainstorm the problems (for the 1st body paragraph) associated with the phenomenon or fact given in the topic and also some solutions (for the 2nd body paragraph). To brainstorm the problems and solutions you have in your mind, you can jot them down in the form of key words and phrases somewhere on your paper as follows:

1st body paragraph (*problems*):

waste disposal

traffic congestion

2nd body paragraph (*solutions*):

make new laws/control the litter production levels

put tax on private cars/improve the public transportation system

The introduction paragraph usually consists of three sentences. The first sentence is a general statement about the topic:

Over the last few decades, many cities have quickly grown into gigantic metropolises.

This is a rather short sentence, but shares the introductory idea about the whole essay with the reader. To begin the sentence, instead of “*Over the last few decades*”, you can use other phrases such as:

In the last decade,
Over the last few years,
Over the recent years/decades,
Since the advent/outset/onset of...,

After these phrases you should normally use *present perfect* tense as you can see above in our example (*have grown*).

The second sentence should support your first general idea and simultaneously add something new to it. This sentence can describe briefly the problems related to the topic. This is a rather long sentence:

Despite the remarkable range of facilities being offered in such megacities, the number of the pressing problems with which the citizens are struggling is dramatically increasing year by year.

The third sentence shows your plan. Structurally speaking, this is the key sentence of the first paragraph which will help the examiner understand whether you have grasped the type of topic question you are going to answer to or not:

This essay will look at these problems and propose some reasonable solutions.

You can write the final sentence of the introduction paragraph in different forms, for example:

This essay will examine / scrutinise / analyse / inspect/ have a look at these issues and suggest some solutions.

This essay will look at some of the problems arising from/associated with this and try to propose possible/practical/viable/effective solutions.

This essay will attempt/make an attempt/try to look at these ramifications/difficulties in detail and suggest some ways to tackle/solve/resolve/address/deal with them.

Once you are finished with the introduction paragraph, you should count the words quickly and write the number down next to the paragraph. It should be between 40 and 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on writing and counting the words of this paragraph.

Now you should refer to the problems and solutions you just wrote them down and make your best attempt to expand them in a structurally reasonable way.

The 1st body paragraph should present some problems arising from living in big cities. Have a look at the problems you have already brainstormed and start writing the paragraph using proper linking words and phrases:

***First and foremost**, one of the main problems of living in big cities **seems to be** the huge amount of waste disposal. This has its roots in the citizens' consumerist lifestyle and the deficiency of garbage recycling systems. For example, in my home city, Tehran, people produce thousands of tons of trash every day exacerbating the situation day by day. **Furthermore**, another pressing issue **appears to be** the traffic congestion. Millions of people every day commute to work by their private cars, and the number of people travelling in their own automobiles has uncontrollably rocketed. **As an expectable consequence**, more air and sound pollution **might** increasingly **be produced** in large cities such as New York City, because of more vehicles behind the red lights.*

It can be seen that the linking words and phrases such as “*First and foremost*”, “*Furthermore*” and “*As an expectable consequence*” have given the paragraph a reasonable structure, dividing it into two or three main areas and adding a brief example to each of them.

Phrases like “*seems to be*” and “*appears to be*” help have an impersonal and tentative tone. Another way of creating more academic space is to use *passive voice*, for example, “*might be produced*” in the last sentence of the paragraph. You can use passive verb once or twice every paragraph to give it a sense of tentativeness.

You can use different vocabulary to write about a problem, for example:

Issue
Challenge

difficult/challenging/complicated situation
difficulty
obstacle
impediment
problematic or controversial issue
ramification
predicament
complication
tribulation

Now, count the words immediately after finishing the paragraph and write the number down next to the first body paragraph. It should approximately be between 90 and 100 words. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on this.

Now you need to be quick and write the 2nd body paragraph, which is about the solutions to the problems you have presented in the previous paragraph. You should go back quickly to your brainstormed points and have a close eye on the solutions proposed, i.e. “*make new laws and control the litter production levels*” “*put tax on private cars and improve the public transportation system*”.

Turning to the possible solutions, regarding waste disposal, it **firstly** has to be said that the solution is for the government to make laws to control the litter production levels. **As a result**, people **will be persuaded** to buy and consume those products which they really need and avoid throwing away too much. **Additionally**, to tackle a grave issue like heavy traffic, the government can put tax on private cars and improve the public transportation. Charging the individuals who use their own cars can probably lead to less traffic jam and **consequently**, lower pollution levels.

Try to open the 2nd body paragraph with one of these phrases:

Turning to the possible solutions

Turning to the effective remedies

Regarding the viable solutions

Regarding the practical remedies

With respect/regard to the possible/practical remedies or solutions

In order to put the solutions forward, you can use different structures, for example:

To address/solve/resolve/tackle/deal with/curtail this problem, the government/the governmental authorities should take steps to penalize people for doing...

A possible/viable remedy/solution for the government/people/experts is to put/allot/allocate more resources/money to ban/outlaw /curb/restrict...

The way forward could/might be to prevent people from...

This problem could possibly/probably be resolved/addressed/tackled/solved by promoting/encouraging ...

Solving/tackling/dealing with/addressing/curtailing this issue involves forcing/obliging people to...

This ramification can be alleviated / curtailed by raising awareness of...

These barriers might/may be removed/eliminated/reduced/lowered/curtailed by setting up new measures/initiatives/policies/programmes...

Another solution/remedy might be...

To overhaul the system of...

To jump-start the economy, the government should...

As it can be seen, a passive verb (*will be persuaded*) is used in the second sentence of the 2nd body paragraph. Try to use passive verbs sparingly, not too much.

The number of words of the 2nd body paragraph should approximately be between 90 and 100. Count the words quickly, jot the number down next to the paragraph and move on to the conclusion. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on the 2nd body paragraph. You should have spent about 30 minutes of your time by now.

As you know, the conclusion paragraph normally gives the summary of the two body paragraphs and your brief recommendation at the end:

All in all, it is clear that major cities are confronted with a variety of serious difficulties as the increasing quantity of waste created by the consumer society, and the streets which are heavily congested. We will definitely suffer more, *unless* we find the practical ways of addressing these

issues. **My view is that** the main responsibility for solving these problems lies with both the governments and citizens.

Make your best attempt to paraphrase everything as much as you can. For instance, in the this paragraph, “*the consumer society*” is a slightly different paraphrase of “*the citizens’ consumerist lifestyle*”, “*difficulties*” is a close synonym for “*problems*”, “*the streets which are heavily congested*” has nearly the same meaning as “*the traffic congestion*”, and “*the practical ways of addressing these issues*” remind us of “*the possible solutions*”.

Some of the important grammatical structures which might help express *contrasting ideas* and write not only a better conclusion, but also better introduction and body paragraphs are:

although: *The more privatised the education system becomes, the higher the cost of getting a university level will possibly be, although the better quality of privatised schools is indisputable.*

unless: *The depletion of the ozone layer seems to be unsurmountable, unless green revolutions and ozone layer-friendly campaign are set up and supported by the people and governmental authorities.*

otherwise: *The way for the authorities is to espouse the existing green movements in order to alleviate the problem of climate change, otherwise the climatic situation will be exacerbated and nothing else could be done.*

however: *Levying heavy tax on traffic criminals may seem to be reasonable, however, it might lead to general opposition to the new traffic laws.*

nevertheless/nonetheless: *The recent researches revealed that there is a close relationship between playing violent games and aggression as contemporary grave issues. Nevertheless, this debate has remained controversial.*

instead: *The government should not rely only on its legal power to tackle such a thorny problem, instead, they might as well attempt to take more humanistic steps.*

despite: *Despite the opposing viewpoints, I think that the government should bring in new laws to lessen the rates of crime committed by drug smugglers.*

in spite of: *In spite of all the existing impediments, people can set up campaigns to support a fuel-free world.*

whereas: *Some feel that this problem could be resolved by the allotment of more resources to the environmental issues such as endangered species, whereas other people think that we need to be more practical in order to save the species put in danger by recent heavy industrial activities.*

notwithstanding: *Notwithstanding the lack of financial resources, it is necessary for the government to lessen the imposed taxes and address the issue of austerity.*

regardless: *The way for the authorities is to enforce new laws regardless of race, religion and sex.*

The conclusion paragraph consists of 2 or 3 long and short sentences and is approximately around 40 to 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on this paragraph.

Now you should have another 5 minutes to go through the whole essay and correct the possible grammatical and lexical errors.

A summary of Problem and Solution essay

Brainstorming: prepare a rough plan of writing about some possible problems and solutions in less than 5 minutes

Introduction: three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a general statement about the topic

a supporting sentence

the general plan of the essay

1st body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some problems associated with the phenomenon given in the topic question

2nd body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some reasonable solutions to the introduced problems

Conclusion: two or three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a summary of the two body paragraphs

a short impersonal recommendation

Final correction: correct the grammatical and lexical errors in less than 5 minutes

Model essay 1

People who live in large cities face a range of problems in their daily life.

What are the most significant of these problems? How can these problems be tackled?

Over the last few decades, many cities have quickly grown into gigantic metropolises. Despite the remarkable range of facilities being offered in such mega-cities, the number of the pressing problems with which the citizens are struggling is dramatically increasing year by year. This essay will look at these problems and propose some logical solutions.

First and foremost, one of the main problems of living in big cities seems to be the huge amount of waste disposal. This has its roots in the citizens' consumerist lifestyle and the deficiency of garbage recycling systems. For example, in my home city, Tehran, people produce thousands of tons of trash every day exacerbating the situation day by day. Furthermore, another pressing issue appears to be the traffic congestion. Millions of people every day commute to work by their private cars, and the number of people travelling in their own automobiles has uncontrollably rocketed. As an expectable consequence, more air and sound pollution might increasingly be produced in large cities such as New York City, because of more vehicles behind the red lights.

Turning to the possible solutions, regarding waste disposal, it firstly has to be said that the solution is for the government to make laws to control the litter production levels. As a result, people will be persuaded to buy and consume those products which they really need and avoid throwing away too much. Additionally, to tackle a grave issue like heavy traffic, the government can put tax on private cars and improve the public transportation. Charging the individuals who use their own cars can probably lead to less traffic jam and consequently, lower pollution levels.

All in all, it is clear that major cities are confronted with a variety of serious difficulties as the increasing quantity of waste created by the consumer society, and the streets which are heavily congested. We will definitely suffer more, unless we find the practical ways of addressing these issues. My view is that the main responsibility for solving these problems lies with both the governments and citizens.

(341 words)

Model essay 2

Many doctors are concerned about the high use of computer games by children and young people.

What mental and physical problems may arise from excessive use of these games? How could these problems be reduced?

Computer games are the products of advanced computer programming and digital technology which might endanger the lives of children and the youth both mentally and physically. This essay will try to examine some of the problems arising from this and try to propose possible solutions.

First and foremost, violent video games, if used excessively, can result in children's increased aggressive thoughts, feelings, and behaviors, and decreased prosocial helping. In addition, the overuse of these games may lead children to a sort of social isolation. They may spend less time in other activities such as doing homework, reading, sports, and interacting with the family and friends and end up in sedentary lifestyle. Finally, the children addicted to these games may end up with a poor diet of eating fast food which can affect their social and academic achievements in long-term.

Turning to the possible remedies, it may be beneficial for the children to promote a more dynamic way of living through cardiovascular exercises and healthy diet to detoxify their lifestyles and ameliorate their mental and physical conditions. Furthermore, this grave issue can be alleviated by getting them know about the risk through encouraging initiatives such as health warnings on games packaging or being mentioned by well-known people or celebrities. Famous people can really aid to inform people about such issues.

Overall, gaming excessively may result in ramifications like increased aggression, social isolation, a poor diet and ineffective academic and social careers, which can possibly be tackled by having a more active lifestyle and increasing social awareness of such a paramount issue.

(260 words)

Model essay 3

Overpopulation of urban areas has led to numerous problems.

Identify one or two serious ones and suggest ways that governments and individuals can tackle these problems.

In many countries people have moved increasingly to settle in cities over the last few decades. This has created conurbations and urban sprawl from

which might arise a variety of problems. This essay will attempt to scrutinise some of these grave issues and propose reasonable remedies.

First and foremost, it is clear that the increasing number of city dwellers has led to higher stress levels resulting from sound and air pollution, due to reasons such as the citizens' tendency to drive their own cars frequently. New York City is a good example of this. Furthermore, the city amenities have normally been designed to cover a limited amount of human needs, however, the deluge of people coming from the countryside to live in the inner-city might get insufficient facilities such as public transport and sanitation.

Regarding the possible remedies, firstly, it has to be said that stress levels caused by sound and air pollution, which is a result of overcrowdedness, may be addressed by offering cash incentives and higher living standards to those who accept to move out of urban areas and settle in remote smaller cities. Secondly, it is important for the government to introduce new amenities into those distant regions to bring safety and contentment into the lives of the people who have migrated to live outside the crowded and polluted conurbations. These solutions could be viable if the government turns to create a decentralised economy.

In a word, ramifications such as sound and air pollution causing higher levels of stress and the insufficiency of the city amenities due to the soaring number of immigrants to the large cities might be resolved by creating higher living standards and infrastructure in remote areas, and by motivating the city inhabitants to move to the countryside and have a peaceful life afterwards.

(300 words)

Model essay 4

The internet has transformed the way information is shared and consumed, but it has also created problems that did not exist before.

What are the most serious problems associated with the internet and what solutions can you suggest?

By the advent of the Internet numerous ways have been invented in which people could communicate more closely, businessmen could carry out their transactions more easily and quickly, and the entire world's population is taking paramount steps towards globalisation. This has created some serious problems as well. This essay will inspect some of these challenges and their remedies, and draw a reasonable conclusion.

Firstly, it should be said that the instant availability of the Internet has

caused many people to have overwhelming desire to visit many sites and discover endless information in cyberspace. This might lead to a sort of cybersickness which can be detrimental to their private and social lives. Secondly, criminals who are skilled in the field of computer can have easier access to public or sometimes private information of people and turn to crimes like cyberstalking. As a consequence, these criminal activities which are nowadays quite common in cyberspace have made the Internet largely unsafe for many ordinary citizens.

Turning to the effective solutions, first of all, the way forward for the government is to encourage more physical activities than sitting in front of computer for a long time in order to sift information or surf the Internet. The youth can also be motivated by their families, friends and teachers to be more outgoing and do daily exercises or go hiking and trekking. Additionally, to tackle the problem of cybercrime, a viable solution for the authorities and experts is to raise awareness about how cybercriminals act and in what ways the victims can resist to be vulnerable to cyberfraud.

Given these points, it appears that cybersickness and cybercrime are the paramount predicaments the Internet users are continuously confronted with and addressing these thorny issues involves persuading people to be more extrovert, and educating people to reduce their susceptibility against cybercrime.

(303 words)

Model essay 5

What are the possible problems arising from unemployment? What can be done to deal with this?

For a long period of time the unemployed have been dealing with several problems which can affect in part both their personal lives and the community they live in, although there are remedies to alleviate this to some extent. This essay will attempt to look at these problematic issues, propose possible solutions and draw a reasonable conclusion.

Regarding the possible problems, it can, firstly, be said that joblessness can cause poverty, which might lead to financial inability to serve personal needs as well as create stress. Furthermore, evidence shows that the jobless citizens are not able to pay taxes due to reasons such as lack of personal budget. Obviously, this can have long-term negative impacts on the wider economy. Greece is a good example of being a victim of budget deficit rooting from

massive amounts of unpaid taxes.

Turning to the possible solutions, first and foremost, the way forward for the government is to create new jobs by supporting entrepreneurs with financial aids like low-interest loans in order to help them establish new factories. This may also be done by bringing back the jobs gone abroad at the time of economic hardship, which might eventually create a prosperous market for the benefit of potential job seekers. Additionally, the government can lessen the unemployment levels through supporting the private sector of the economy by lowering the tax rates and boosting the domestic investment opportunities. A good example of this is Indonesia.

Overall, despite the predicaments such as low purchasing power of the jobless, their insufficient tax-paying ability and its long-run effects on the national economy, there are possible solutions like creating jobs and supporting the private part of the market to tackle this apparently insurmountable situation.

(285 words)

Model essay 6

The major cities in the world are growing fast, as well as their problems.

What are the problems that young people living in cities are facing with? Give solutions to these problems.

Over the last few decades, cosmopolitan cities have provided many young people with new facilities, nonetheless, there are problematic issues with which the youth have been constantly struggling. This essay will make an attempt to analyse these issues and suggest some possible solutions.

Regarding the problems arising from megacities, it can firstly be cited that the most challenging issue for the youth is the lack of jobs. Evidence shows that a majority of young people who have been graduated from universities cannot find suitable jobs and remain unemployed for years. A good example of this is the Middle East in which young job seekers suffer from joblessness because of economic and political crises. Illiteracy is the second greatest problem many young people in big cities are facing. This thorny problem have ruined their future prospects so that many young illiterate people prefer to move abroad to receive a better education or vocational training.

Turning to the possible remedies, the way forward the government is to support entrepreneurs to create more job opportunities for the young people.

The government also can bring in new laws to ease the process through which the youth apply and get jobs. For instance, they can introduce new legislation to limit the qualifications and credentials currently necessary to get and keep a job for the young unemployed who do not have enough professional experience. Moreover, the problem of illiteracy might be solved through setting up free education systems to help the youth get full-time academic or vocational education. This can take place with the aid of international humanitarian organisations or rich countries which are willing to establish new colleges or educational institutions in order to assist the illiterate youngsters to gain updated knowledge.

Overall, in spite of existing ramifications arising from metropolises such as joblessness and illiteracy, the governments can possibly create jobs to eradicate unemployment and humanitarian organisations or well-off countries can provide illiterate young people with new educational facilities to aid them to receive a good education as soon as possible.

(337 words)

Practice tasks

NB: Try to use the topic-based vocabulary and collocations (*appendix 2*) at the end of the book to answer each given topic question.

Topic 1: work

Moving away to work abroad can create some problems. What problems are associated with working abroad? And how these problems can be alleviated?

Topic 2: countryside

More and more people are migrating to cities in search of a better life, but city life can be extremely difficult. Explain some of the difficulties of living in a city. How can governments make urban life better for everyone?

Topic 3: family

Nowadays many families from underdeveloped countries move to live and work in one of the western societies. What issues might this create for them? How can these problems be possibly solved?

Topic 4: Cities

Heavy traffic jam is a common phenomenon in mega-cities. What issues may it create? And how these problems can somehow be reduced?

Topic 5: global challenges, environment and species

Global warming is one of the biggest threats humans face in the 21st Century and sea levels are continuing to rise at alarming rates.

What problems are associated with this and what are some possible solutions?

Topic 6: health

Air pollution as a modern phenomenon is increasingly affecting our lives throughout the world, especially in technologically more advanced countries. In what ways can air pollution affect city life? How this problematic situation can be resolved?

UNIT

4: Cause and Effect Essay

This type of essay is about an idea, phenomenon or fact from contemporary life. The topic question asks you to write about the possible causes of or reasons for it and its possible effects or impacts on our lifestyle or society. You should use correct grammar and vocabulary to express your ideas in a proper way. It is unnecessary to use complicated vocabulary or grammatically very complex sentences. You should also know that, oversimplified way of reasoning and writing may lower your band score. Academic tone, grammatical accuracy and relevant vocabulary are three important rules to write a proper “Cause and effect” essay.

“Cause and effect” topic questions might be given in a variety of forms such as:

What are the causes of...? What may be the effects on...?

What factors influence...? What effect can... have on...?

What are the factors/issues which have contributed to the causes of...?

What can be the reasons for this? What do you think are the consequences of...?

What are the reasons for/behind this? What problems can this cause?

What can cause this and what are the positive and negative effects of...?

What are the most significant reasons for this and what beneficial or detrimental impacts can this have on...?

What are the issues which have resulted in/led to...?

What are the factors/issues responsible for...? What are the impacts of...?

The following topic question is about truancy. It asks you to write about the possible causes of playing truant (*staying illegally away from school*) and its effects on the child or the society:

In many countries, truancy is worrying problem for both parents and

educators. What are the causes of truancy, and what may be the effects on the child and the wider community?

Like other types of task two essays, a “*Cause and effect*” essay is usually made of four paragraphs. You should use the introduction to briefly explain the topic. Then, you should write about some causes and exemplify them shortly in the 2nd body paragraph. In the 3rd body paragraph, you should write about some effects of the phenomenon and, finally, you should summarise the two body paragraphs in the conclusion.

In less than 5 minutes, try to brainstorm some causes (for the 1st body paragraph) of truancy. Think of why a child can stay away from school in an illegal way, for example, because of playing with peers and hang out with friends. Now you should think about the effects (for the 2nd body paragraph) of playing truant. Jot them down in the form of key words and phrases somewhere on your paper as follows:

1st body paragraph (causes):

educators’ misconduct

parents pushing their children

other students involved in minor crimes

2nd body paragraph (effects):

bad effects on students’ studies/lower quality of their educational career

turn to minor crimes/increase youth delinquency and illiteracy

It is enough to write three sentences for the introduction paragraph. As already mentioned, the first sentence is a general statement about the topic:

Modern education system has its own problems due to reasons such as complexity and intensity.

This is a somehow short sentence, however, it shares the general idea of the essay with the examiner.

The second sentence adds something new to the first sentence and it can describe briefly the points associated with the topic. This could be a rather long sentence:

Truancy seems to be of paramount importance regarding students' future educational career and the whole society's literacy levels and quality.

The third sentence shows your plan:

This essay will look at some probable causes of truancy and attempt to represent some of its effects.

You can write the final sentence of the introduction paragraph in different forms:

This essay will examine/scrutinise/analyse/inspect/have a look at some of the causes of this and some of its possible effects.

This essay will look at some of the causes of this and try to present its possible effects.

This essay will attempt/make an attempt/try to look at the causes of this in detail and also its effects.

I will look/have a look at some of its causes and effects with relevant examples.

Once you are finished with the introduction paragraph, count the words quickly and write the number down next to the paragraph. It should be between 40 and 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on writing and counting the words of the introduction paragraph.

Now you should refer to the causes and effects that you have already brainstormed and try to expand them in a structurally reasonable way.

The 1st body paragraph should present some causes of playing truant. Begin to write the paragraph using proper linking words. Linking words give your essay a sense of cohesion if used appropriately:

*Firstly, the main reason for being illegally absent from school lessons **can** probably **be stemmed from** some educators' misconduct towards students. Evidence shows that in countries where there are few laws to support students against their teachers' possible misbehaviours, the rate of truancy has uncontrollably rocketed. Secondly, parents also can in part **be a cause of** truancy pushing their children to achieve the level far beyond their real capability. This can **create** unwillingness to seriously follow the school*

lessons. Thirdly, other students involved in minor crimes may **have negative effects on** their classmates causing them also to play truant.

In addition to what you can see in bold in this paragraph, you can use different vocabulary to write about the causes of a phenomenon, for example:

Global warming **is due to** reasons like greenhouse emissions.

It goes without saying that air pollution is **due largely/in part/partly/partially to** the overuse of fossil fuels.

Owing to the fact that

Humans are still dealing with the insurmountable problems **resulting from** the two World Wars.

The police **are** legally **responsible for** the increasing rate of crime.

A huge amount of damage to the environment **has been brought about** by climate change.

Unemployment seems to **be the main reason for** the youth to turn to crimes.

Nowadays, the ice caps are increasingly melting and more islands are disappearing from the map, **the reason is because** humans' overconsumption of fossil fuels has led to a dramatic increase in our planet's temperature.

Clean air could **be the upshot of** less greenhouse gases and industrial emissions.

Less social skills can **be a consequence of** inefficient family upbringing.

Children should learn that their behaviours could **have** positive and negative **consequences** accordingly.

One of **the likely outcomes of** smoking in public places is that it can annoy the families and individuals who have come to have coffee and socialise.

The government can **induce** people **to** abide by the traffic regulations through some educational programmes.

By **offering** more governmental **inducements** the industrial factories might move out of inner-city and help have a cleaner air.

Now, count the words immediately after finishing the paragraph and write the number down next to the first body paragraph. It should approximately be between 90 and 100 words. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on this.

The 2nd body paragraph, which is about the effects of truancy, needs to be

written exactly based on what you have brainstormed.

*Turning to the effects of truancy, staying deliberately away from school without any permission could **consequently have bad effects on** students' studies. **As a result**, it might **lead to** lower quality of their educational career through, for example, dropping the school subjects. In addition, from the social viewpoint, marked reluctance to attend the routine lessons because of having less belief in education system can **have impact on** the truants to turn to minor crimes. **This could increase the level of** youth delinquency and illiteracy to some extent.*

Try to open the 2nd body paragraph with one of these phrases:

Turning to the possible effects/impacts of...

Regarding the consequences/results/repercussions/side-effects/after-effects of...

Words and phrases in bold show the way you can use words and phrases to express the effects of something. You can use a variety of other vocabulary to speak about the effects of a phenomenon, for example:

*Violent games can **give rise to** aggressive behaviour at the school or in the family space.*

*Smoking may **cause** chronic diseases such as cancer.*

*Global warming **has led to** increase in sea levels due to reasons such as melting ice caps.*

*High stress levels can **produce** anxiety and cause more grave psychological issues such as depression.*

*Taking few annual holidays may **result in** lower quality of work and as a consequence, lower productivity.*

*Air pollution **has contributed to** many diseases since the advent of megacities.*

*Stress and anxiety **are the possible effects of** sound pollution.*

*Some possible **outcomes** of poor sound insulation are stress and insomnia.*

*There is a serious danger of insurmountable physical problems **in the aftermath of** pushing employees to burn midnight oil.*

*Unemployment might **be a sequel to** advanced technology used instead of*

human working force.

Air and sound pollution can largely **affect** the quality of life in metropolises.

The flood of refugees coming to European countries may **have** negative **effects on** the life of many Europeans.

Climate change **has occurred as a result of** long-term human emissions.

Public seminars about the disadvantages of eating fast food may **impact upon** the citizens to have a more balanced diet.

Technology **has had a big impact on** the amount of natural resources being exploited and used.

Zero-tolerance policies can sometimes **generate** more conscientiousness and reduce the levels of criminal activities.

Role models can **engender** different positive and negative characteristics in children's personality.

If the government interferes in cultural issues, it can possibly **worsen** the situation.

In a nutshell, cracking down on criminals might **aggravate** the situation.

Evidence shows that increasing tax rate might only **intensify** the potential social unrest and widen the gap between the poor and rich.

Markedly, putting more cash into the economy can **magnify** the existing financial crisis.

Critics say that the Internet **has amplified** the problem of crime over the last few years.

Allotment of new resources to a huge problem such as climate change may **improve** the situation only partially.

If the work commuters use public transport more frequently, it may aid to **lessen** the effects of air pollution arising from driving private cars.

Green movements **militate against** more oil pipelines in the northern part of the country.

Our lifestyle **has been deteriorated** due to reasons such as pollution and economic crisis.

Financial problems may **exacerbate** the psychological issues to a great extent.

War could **precipitate** economic recession dramatically.

Constant parental criticism may **undermine** a child's independence and self-confidence.

Unemployment **has weakened** the social stability of many families.

Lower inflation rate may **trigger** the economic boom.

Air pollution can seriously **damage** humans' physical health.

Lack of enough police force might **harm** the security of a region.

Uncontrolled building of industrial zones **has** largely **spoilt** the environment.

Family hostilities can **provoke** violence in children uncontrollably.

Climate change **has** increasingly **sparked** massive storms in different continents.

Some believe that bringing new strict laws against smoking in public places may **ameliorate** the situation for non-smokers.

Strict family rules and regulations may **stifle** creativity and innovation in their offspring.

Truancy can **have** serious **repercussions** for the youth's academic achievements and, as a consequence, their future prospects.

War could possibly **have after-effects** such as drought and famine.

Modern medicines **have** many **side-effects** which sometimes can put humans' lives in danger.

Air pollution might **have a knock-on effect on** the quality of city lifestyle.

Multinational companies should make attempts to decrease their environmental **footprint** in order to decrease the global temperature to a normal degree.

Overall, many underdeveloped countries **undergo** an unsystematic transformation which might not necessarily be serving a constructive purpose.

The number of words of the 2nd body paragraph should approximately be between 90 and 100. Count the words quickly, write the number down next to the paragraph and move on to the conclusion. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on the 2nd body paragraph. You should have spent about 30 minutes of your time by now.

As you know, the conclusion paragraph normally gives the summary of the two body paragraphs:

To sum up, truancy can be **a likely outcome of** the problems arising from lack of building up a healthy relationship between students and their teachers and the destructive parental behaviour towards their youngsters regarding school. Having **rather negative attitude towards school life** and being constantly prone to commit petty crimes are the possible upshots truants

might be struggling with in the future.

Paraphrase everything as much as possible. For instance, in this paragraph, “*negative attitude towards school life*” is a slightly different paraphrase of “*less belief in education system*”, “*upshot*” is a close synonym for “*effect*”, “*a likely outcome of*” has nearly the same meaning as “*the effects of*”.

The conclusion paragraph consists of 2 or 3 long and short sentences and is approximately between 40 to 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on this paragraph.

Spend the last 5 minutes on correcting the possible grammatical and lexical errors. That’s all!

A summary of Cause and Effect essay

Brainstorming: prepare a rough plan of writing about some possible causes and effects in less than 5 minutes

Introduction: three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a general statement about the topic

a supporting sentence

the general plan of the essay

1st body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some causes of the phenomenon

2nd body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some effects of the phenomenon

Conclusion: two or three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a summary of the two body paragraphs

Final correction: correct the grammatical and lexical errors in 5 minutes

Model essay 1

In many countries, truancy is worrying problem for both parents and educators.

What are the causes of truancy, and what may be the effects on the child and the wider community?

Modern education system has its own problems due to reasons such as complexity and intensity. Truancy seems to be of paramount importance regarding students' future educational career and the whole society's literacy levels and quality. This essay will look at some probable causes of truancy and attempt to represent some of its effects.

Firstly, the main reason for being illegally absent from school lessons can probably be stemmed from some educators' misconduct towards students. Evidence shows that in countries where there are few laws to support students against their teachers' possible misbehaviours, the rate of truancy has uncontrollably rocketed. Secondly, parents also can in part be a cause of truancy pushing their children to achieve the level far beyond their real capability. This can create unwillingness to seriously follow the school lessons. Thirdly, other students involved in minor crimes may have negative effects on their classmates causing them also to play truant.

Turning to the effects of truancy, staying deliberately away from school without any permission could consequently have bad effects on students' studies. As a result, it might lead to lower quality of their educational career through, for example, dropping the school subjects. In addition, from the social viewpoint, marked reluctance to attend the routine lessons because of having less belief in education system can have impact on the truants to turn to minor crimes. This could increase the level of youth delinquency and illiteracy to some extent.

To sum up, truancy can be a likely outcome of the problems arising from lack of building up a healthy relationship between students and their teachers and the destructive parental behaviour towards their youngsters regarding school. Having rather negative attitude towards school life and being constantly prone to commit petty crimes are the possible upshots truants might be struggling with in the future.

(302 words)

Model essay 2

Illiteracy continues to be a concern for many countries in the world today.

What are the causes of illiteracy in the modern world, and what effects does it have on the people concerned and on society as a whole.

Illiteracy appears to be a much-discussed problem which is sometimes considered as an ever-present danger in many underdeveloped countries. This pressing issue has its own causes and adverse effects. This essay will look closely at these causes and will try to scrutinise their effects.

First and foremost, there is a widely-held concern that inability to read and write can largely be rooted in poverty. Low-income families struggling with the problems of run-down areas of megacities are mostly prone to receive lower level of education. Moreover, dysfunctional families may equally be another reason for why children get a poor education and leave their schools early without earning a degree. Finally, low-quality educational system, for instance in third world countries, could probably be another explanation for the increasing rate of illiterate people.

Turning to the possible effects of illiteracy, firstly, it seems that the city dwellers without the ability to read and write, could feel detached from civilised society to some extent. This may bring about antisocial behaviours and exacerbate the uneducated citizens' social status. Furthermore, social isolation coming from their low self-esteem may lower their chances to get good jobs and build up their future prospects, especially in our modern world where literacy is a quintessential prerequisite for everyone to socially open up and forge a constant relationship with other people. Finally, precarious financial position can be considered as another effect that illiteracy may have on illiterate members of the society.

On the whole, it seems that illiteracy can be a result of poverty, intergenerational transmission of such an inability and poor education system, and it can result in social isolation, lower professional opportunities and unstable financial position.

(277 words)

Model essay 3

Many countries today are experiencing problems associated with noise pollution (excessive noise above normal background noise.)

What are the causes of this phenomenon, and what effects does it have on the people affected?

The advances in technology have increasingly brought about noise pollution parallel to air and water pollutions, especially in metropolises which are crammed full of goings and comings by means of public and private transport modes. This has severely led to other problems. This essay will look carefully at the causes of this type of pollution and its possible effects.

Regarding the causes of this, firstly, noise pollution might be the upshot of affinity with airports and airways. People who live close to the airports usually suffer from departure or arrival of the aircrafts nights and days. Secondly, city dwellers who reside near the inner-city which is teeming with traffic jams and over-crowded with citizens and passengers, may experience excessive noise which in some cases can be detrimental to their health. A good example of this is New York City where people living in hinterland suffer all the time from maelstroms and congested roads in their neighbourhood. Finally, construction of dwellings in residential areas and factories in industrial zones might be another serious cause of creating noise excessively, particularly if the residential buildings lack proper insulation such as double glazed windows.

Turning to the possible effects of this, it has to be said that those who live next to places which are stuffed full of vehicles and aircrafts may not be able to sleep or relax well. This might lead them to drowsiness in the next day at work, which can harm their working career and endanger their future prospects. Additionally, bad sleeping habits may increase the levels of stress to a degree that might affect our manners at home or our effectiveness in the workplace.

In essence, living or working close to bustling areas and the regions which are full packed of air, road or rail means of transport, and also industrial areas can be the possible causes of noise pollution, which can create more stress and bad sleeping habits drifting in and out of sleep.

(324 words)

Model essay 4

Pollution of rivers, lakes and seas is a major concern for people who seek to protect environment.

What are the possible causes of water pollution, and what effects does this have on animal life and human society?

Nowadays, water contamination appears to be of the utmost importance. A number of causes have accelerated this process which can lead to some

deleterious results. This essay will look at some of these causes and represent some of their effects.

First and foremost, water resources are continuously being polluted by sewage from residential and commercial buildings is often disposed into the rivers and seas. Furthermore, water pollution is caused by oil spills from tankers and ships. Oil cannot be dissolved in water and forms a thick sludge which can be extremely harmful for aquatic creatures and marine life. Finally, it is essential to consider that burning fossil fuels into the air causes the formation of acidic particles in the atmosphere. When these particles mix with water vapor, the result is acid rain which contaminates water to a great extent.

Turning to the possible effects of water pollution, it might have serious repercussions, for example swimming in and drinking contaminated water causes health issues such as typhoid fever and stomach sickness in human beings. Secondly, industrial chemicals and agricultural pesticides that end up in aquatic environments can accumulate in fish that are later eaten by humans. Fish are easily poisoned with metals that are also later consumed by humans. Moreover, ecosystems are destroyed by the rising temperature in the water, as coral reefs are affected by the bleaching effect due to warmer temperatures. Additionally, the warm water forces indigenous water species to seek cooler water in other areas, causing an ecological damaging shift of the affected area.

To sum up, it is obvious that sewage, oil spills, burning fossil fuels and acid rain can end up with water contamination which may put wildlife and human societies largely in danger.

(288 words)

Practice tasks

NB: Try to use the topic-based vocabulary and collocations (*appendix 2*) at the end of the book to answer each given topic question.

Topic 1: work

What can be the reasons for work stress? What do you think are the consequences of working in a stressed condition?

Topic 2: countryside

What are the most significant reasons for increasing rural migration to cities? And what detrimental impacts can this have on national economy?

Topic 3: family

Nowadays the youth tend to leave their family home to live alone. What can cause this and what are the positive and negative effects of single life?

Topic 4: Cities

What are the causes of noise pollution in metropolises? What may be its effects on the citizens life quality?

Topic 5: global challenges, environment and species

Climate change is a challenging phenomenon humans face these days. What factors have caused this? And what effects can it have on our lives?

Topic 6: health

Air pollution as a modern phenomenon is increasingly affecting our lives throughout the world, especially in technologically more advanced countries. In what ways can air pollution affect city life? How this problematic situation can be resolved?

Topic 7: Crime

What are the causes of school vandalism? In what ways this issue can be addressed?

UNIT 5: Cause/Effect and Solution Essay

A “Cause and solution” essay has the same structure as a “Cause and effect” essay. In fact, it is a mixture of “Cause and effect” and “Problem and solution” essays. The topic question gives you a problem or a problematic issue and asks you to explore the causes of this and how the problem could be solved (model essays 1-5). Sometimes it asks you to write about the effects of a possible question instead of its causes (model essay 6). You should read the topic question carefully which is written in one of the following forms:

How does this effect...? How could this situation be improved?

What are the reasons for this? What can be done to resolve this problem?

Why do you think that is? What could be done to alleviate/reduce this problematic situation?

What do you think is the reason for...? What solutions you offer to deal with this situation?

What is the reason for this? What could be done to balance out...?

What causes...? What solutions are there to this problem?

Had this had any negative impact on...? What measures could be taken to address this situation?

What is the effect of this? What could be done to counteract this problem?

How does this effect...? How countermeasures can be taken to take this problematic situation under control?

The paragraphing is exactly like a *Problem and Solution* essay, but instead of the problems considered in the first body paragraph, you need to introduce the causes of a problem. Some causes of a problematic issue as well as a few solutions for the problem with reasonable examples will suffice to write two well-organised and standard body paragraphs.

Here is an example of a “Cause and solution” topic question:

Many people today find that the cost of attaining a University-level

education is extremely high for the students and their families. What are the causes of this situation, and how can governments, Universities and the students themselves overcome the problem?

Brainstorm the causes of this as well as the logical solutions separately in the form of key words and phrases somewhere on your paper as follows:

1st body paragraph (causes):

increase in universities' costs/the higher salary of highly-qualified instructors

the privatization of universities and colleges

2nd body paragraph (solutions):

allocate more money to academic education

students should get part-time jobs

provide students with some financial aid

NB: The timing to brainstorm and write down the four paragraphs of a “Cause and effect” essay is exactly the same as a “Cause and effect” essay. You can refer to the vocabulary for “Problem and solution” and “Cause and effect” essays explained in previous units.

Model essay 1

Many people today find that the cost of attaining a University-level education is extremely high for the students and their families.

What are the causes of this situation, and how can governments, Universities and the students themselves overcome the problem?

Nowadays, it seems to be difficult to get a university degree due to reasons like the prohibitively high costs. However, there could be some solutions to this problem. This essay will look at the causes of this and propose some reasonable solutions.

Regarding the causes of expensive education, first and foremost, it can be said that this has taken place because of increase in universities' costs. A good example of such a climb in the expenses of universities such as Oxford or Harvard is the higher salary of highly-qualified instructors. To cover such extra costs the managers of universities have to increase the tuition fees. Additionally, another cause of prohibitive cost of receiving a standard education can probably be seen in the privatization of universities and colleges. The more privatised the education system becomes, the higher the cost of getting a university level will possibly be, although the better quality of privatised schools is indisputable.

Turning to the solutions of this, firstly, a solution for the government is to allocate more money to academic education. Governmental subsidies towards the system of education can help to a great extent cover the costs. Therefore, there would be lower tuition fees to be paid by the students. In addition, to tackle this problem, students should get part-time jobs. Finally, it would be a good solution if the government endeavours to provide students with some financial aid. This may motivate them keep up studying hard.

All in all, although, academic education is currently highly expensive due to causes such as higher administrative costs of universities and also the privatization of educational system, this issue can largely be alleviated by the allotment of more governmental resources to universities, supporting the students to get part-time jobs, and providing them with a considerable financial assistance.

(300 words)

Model essay 2

Transport delays and long journey times are a widespread

phenomenon in many cities today.

What are the causes of this problem, and how could the situation be improved?

One of the major ramifications existing in most megacities might be delays in transport system. This is rooted from two causes and can possibly be alleviated by three main solutions. This essay will look at these causes and remedies closely and attempt to draw a reasonable conclusion after giving possible solutions.

First and foremost, the high levels of traffic congestion may be the most important cause of delayed transport which can create thorny problems for everyday commuters in big cities like New York or Tehran. Additionally, especially in wintertime, inclement weather, such as thunderstorm, hurricane, or blizzard might be the second cause of transport delays. This may end up with putting strain on amenities including transportation system. Finally, another reason for delays in transport might be breakdowns in vehicles which can unwantedly stop buses, trains or airplanes for long hours.

Turning to the possible solutions, firstly, it is vital to increase the amount of tolls for those drivers who use their private cars in order to lessen the number of cars on the roads. Secondly, the government can bring in new laws to allow people to work from home. This can decrease the negative impacts of harsh weather conditions which cause traffic jams as well as car accidents. Moreover, the government should put more resources to train drivers in order to be ready for any possible technological issues while travelling.

Overall, the lack of sufficient financial aid and overcrowded cities appears to be the main causes of traffic delays and mushrooming bottlenecks, and these grave issues might be tackled by more effectual allocation of funds and substantial modifications in our goings and comings.

(273 words)

Model essay 3

Although most people are richer than in the past, modern life seems very stressful, and the number of people suffering from stress is at record levels.

What are the main causes of stress in modern life, and how could stress be reduced?

Since the outset of modern life, many people have probably been dogged with stress, although technological advances have fairly eased the way for

them to improve their financial situation. This essay will look at the reasons for such a grave problem and propose its logical remedies.

One of the main reasons for stress lies in increasing rate of unemployment. Limited job opportunities seem to have changed into a knotty issue for a majority of job seekers, since to get a position, for instance, in a company, they need to have several qualifications and credentials. Another cause of such a pressing ramification can possibly be people's long working hours with strict deadlines. Citizens have always been fraught with the problems such as stress arising from intense working conditions. For example, in Russia, people work more than twelve hours a day. Such a harsh working condition can even exacerbate the situation.

Turning to the possible remedies, the solution for the government, perhaps, is to create more jobs for those with lower levels of expertise or put more resources into education system to give them a real chance of getting more educated. A balance between the quantity and diversity of job opportunities and the number of unemployed individuals has to be maintained in order to curtail the level of social stress to some extent. In addition, the way forward could possibly be to cut the hours people work, and provide them with more leisure facilities. Taking regular holidays, psychologically speaking, can for the most part come to grip with the level of stress.

To sum up, modern lifestyle has posed stress to many city inhabitants because of less job opportunities and long working hours. To clear up this issue, my view is that the main responsibility lies to a great extent with the government and entrepreneurs.

(303 words)

Model essay 4

All over the world, societies are facing a growing problem with obesity. This problem affects both children and adults.

What are the reasons for this rise in obesity? How could it be tackled?

Some decades ago, the level of obesity was much lower than today. However, nowadays, along with recent technological advances and serious social changes, human beings are becoming more and more obese. This essay will present some reasons for this and propose some reasonable solutions.

One of the main causes of the problem is that many citizens are increasingly dependent on cars. For example, in Tehran, my own city, millions of cars are used every day by work commuters. The solution is for

the government to put a tax on private cars, which would probably motivate people to walk or use bicycles more and as a result become less overweight.

Another issue is that many individuals, children or adults, suffer from an unhealthy diet, which creates higher levels of obesity. In many developed and developing countries, the residents of mega-cities have got accustomed to eat junk food because of their limited time for cooking at home. To tackle this issue, the government can decrease the working hours, and also provide people with dietary information, which may help them have a more balanced diet and therefore lose weight.

A third cause of weight problem is that humans don't do regular workout, since they are living an exceedingly hasty lifestyle. Lack of daily exercises can definitely result in fatness in a long period of time. The way forward for the government could be to put more resources to sport facilities. The city inhabitants can also set up a strict workout plan on a daily basis to lessen their stoutness.

All in all, obesity has changed into a challenging problem, due to reasons such as dependence on cars, unhealthy diet and low level of athletic abilities. My view is that the main responsibility for solving the problem lies with the government and people.

(303 words)

Model essay 5

A serious problem affecting countries right across the globe is the lack of water for drinking, washing and other household uses.

Why do many countries face water shortages, and what could be done to alleviate the problem?

Water has always been the principal cause of development in human communities, although its shortage, nowadays, can potentially be considered as an acute constraint on both social and industrial advances. Over the last few decades, the scarcity of such a crucial resource has increasingly been affecting our life. This essay will look at the reasons for this problem and try to propose some convincing solutions.

First and foremost, it has to be mentioned that water shortage is mostly the result of the overwhelming amounts of water used in traditional agriculture. More than sixty seven per cent of our water resources are consumed for farming purposes. Therefore, agriculture is the greatest user of water and the more traditional it is, the more water it uses, owing to the uncontrolled way

of water distribution. Furthermore, research findings show that people in large cities use excessive quantities of water for different purposes. In many cases, they easily waste a lot of water for washing their cars. This, for example, has changed into a major problem in my city, Tehran.

Turning to the possible solutions, a reasonable solution to the wasteful water used by traditional agriculture is to introduce drip irrigation which is a modern way of watering the crops. This can definitely result in more economical consumption of available fresh water. To tackle the excessive amounts of water used in megacities, the government can bring in new laws and consider a zero-tolerance policy to charge the citizens who overuse or waste water. Concurrently, launching a publicity campaign can help the public understand the vital importance of water and stop wasting it.

To sum up, water shortage is becoming a more challenging issue around the world, due to reasons such as traditional farming and overuse by city inhabitants. In my view, the government ought to crack down on those who use too much water in order to stamp out the overconsumption of water.

(319 words)

Model essay 6

The birth rate in most developed countries is predicted to begin to fall over the next 50 years. By 2030 it is estimated that over one third of the population in most developed countries will be aged 65 and over:

What effects will these predictions have on developed countries if they prove true? What can be done now to deal with this situation?

There is a serious debate over what could possibly be the repercussions of ageing population in many modern societies. Personally, I feel that the countries with the populace getting older might face thorny problems over the next decades, although there are solutions to curtail the effects of such an apparently insurmountable issue.

Regarding the effects of declining birth rate and increasing number of aged individuals, evidence suggests that both can gradually result in less younger labourers. This may lead -some countries like Japan- to face some economic problems such as lack of enough workforce and lower levels of production in the long-term. Furthermore, the older the members of a society get, the more geriatric care is necessary, and the government is the one responsible for these additional expenses, although the elderly do not pay much tax as they do not work. Take Italy as an example, which allots annually a huge budget

to geriatric purposes.

Turning to the possible solutions, the biggest step for the government would be to put more resources to encourage younger generations to have larger families. An increase in the birth rate is possible provided that the government provides cash incentives to the couples with more children. A good example of this is Australia. In addition, another way forward might be to bring in less strict immigration laws by the legal bodies. The curtailment of such restrictions may persuade young immigrants to move to the ageing progressed countries such as Germany.

To sum up, it is clear that a country with decreasing birth rate and climbing number of old citizens can come up with a weaker economy and higher health and care expenditure; however, the government can address this by encouraging the young to produce more offspring and also making the immigration rules less cumbersome.

(298 words)

Model essay 7

Crime appears to be rising in most countries in the world, especially among young people.

Identify the possible causes of this trend, and propose some solutions you think would be effective.

One of the grave problems in our modern lifestyle can definitely be the apparently uncontrollable rise in criminal activities, which has its own causes and also solutions. This essay will look at the possible causes of this and attempt to propose some reasonable solutions.

First and foremost, the main reason for increase in crime level can be the rocketing rate of unemployment, which might largely result in poverty. It is obvious, therefore, that most criminals have turned to crime in order to make a living create some personal welfare. In addition, the young people who have been dropped out of school and have not received a proper education could easily become criminals if they are in contact with delinquent youngsters. Finally, the level of crime can go up due to reasons like violence in the media. Teenagers watching violent activities such as larceny, mugging and vandalism in TV series or movies may make an attempt to copy it. The danger of copycat crimes can change into thorny issue if not prevented on time.

Turning to the possible solutions, the first way to reform offenders might

be community service. This may avoid the cost of imprisonments, prison overcrowding and negative effects of prison on young criminals in addition to decreasing the crime level. Another solution to this might be rehabilitation. If criminals could receive a good education and learn personal and job skills after spending time in prison, this could probably help make them better citizens and less likely to re-offend.

Overall, although it seems logical to say that increasing crime levels might be a result of higher level of unemployment, lack of sufficient education and violence in the media, there are possible remedies such as community service and rehabilitation to curtail the rising level of crime.

(296 words)

Model essay 8

A report indicated that many children between 7 and 11 spend too much time watching television and/or play video games.

How does the problem affect the children, their families and society? What measures can be taken to control it?

Evidence shows that the children who watch too much TV and play video games a lot might be affected negatively if they are not controlled strictly by their parents. This essay will attempt to look at the effects of this and propose some reasonable solutions.

Regarding the effects of watching too much TV, it can, firstly, be said that scientific evidence has shown that children might gain weight due to a sort of sedentary lifestyle, meaning that they sit all the time and watch TV or play video games and become overweight after a while. Secondly, TV programmes containing violence and aggression may have negative impacts on our youngsters and show the world a place full of panic and terror. They may sometimes copy what they see and cause physical or psychological injuries to their peers or siblings. Thirdly, the risky behaviours of TV or games characters like getting drunk or addicted might reinforce abnormal actions and racial stereotypes.

Turning to possible remedies of this, parents, first and foremost, should put consistent limits on screen time and make their attempt to limit the time of watching TV or playing video games in order to give their children a constant chance of getting enough night sleep, which can definitely have positive psychological effects on them. Moreover, it is essential for the parents to encourage their offsprings to have more physical outdoor activities such as

sports. Children who join a sports team are not only physically healthier, but also have a greater chance to learn social communication skills and forge real relationships with their peers while playing football or going through a chess tournament.

Overall, negative effects of watching TV overwhelmingly such as obesity, aggression and risky behaviours can be addressed by placing limits on screen time and experiencing more outdoor physical activities and building up new social relationships with people of the same age.

(313 words)

Practice tasks

NB: Try to use the topic-based vocabulary and collocations (*appendix 2*) at the end of the book to answer each given topic question.

Topic 1: work

Moving away to work abroad can affect the lives of immigrants both in a positive and negative ways. What are the positive and negative effects of this? How could this situation be improved?

Topic 2: countryside

More and more people are migrating to cities in search of a better life, but city life can be extremely difficult. Explain some of the difficulties of living in a city. How can governments make urban life better for everyone?

Topic 3: family

Nowadays many families from underdeveloped countries move to live and work in one of the western societies. What issues might this create for them? How can these problems be possibly solved?

Topic 4: Cities

Cities have been growing uncontrollably causing a variety of serious environmental and climatic issues. What are the reasons for this? What can be done to solve this problem?

Topic 5: global challenges, environment and species

A flood of refugees leave their homeland every day to live in a foreign country. Why do you think that is? What could be done to reduce this problematic situation?

Topic 6: health

The number of people who are at risk of serious health problems due to being overweight is increasing.

What do you think is the reason for this? What solutions you offer to deal with this situation?

UNIT 6: Advantage and Disadvantage Essay

An “*Advantages and disadvantages*” essay is about good and bad features of something. This type of topic question asks you to write about how useful or useless a phenomenon could be through explaining its virtues and vices in a grammatically and lexically well-made structure.

There are two types of “*Advantages and disadvantages*” essays. The first type, which is the simpler one, asks you to write simply about the goods and bads of something (model essays 1 & 2). The second type wants also your own opinion regarding the topic (model essay 3). It may ask you whether the benefits of something outweigh its drawbacks or vice versa. In this case, you can investigate the advantages and disadvantages of the phenomenon given and give your view at the end of conclusion paragraph after giving the summary of the two body paragraphs, exactly like a discussion essay.

An “*Advantages and disadvantages*” topic question might be given in a variety of forms, for example:

What are the advantages and disadvantages of...?

What are the benefits/goods and drawbacks/bads detrimental consequences of...?

What are the pros and cons of...?

What are the positives and negatives of...?

Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of...

What are the advantages of...? Are there any disadvantages to this?

What are the advantages to this? Do you think the advantages outweigh the disadvantages?

What are the upsides and downsides of...?

What are the strengths and weaknesses/shortcomings of...?

The following topic question asks you to write about the goods and bads of migration to another country in order to live there or follow your educational career. It asks you only to classify the pros and cons of living or studying abroad:

What are the advantages and disadvantages of leaving your country to live or study abroad?

Like other types of essays, an “advantages and disadvantages” essay is made of four paragraphs. The introduction is used to give a short and clear description of the topic. Afterwards, you need to write about some goods in the 1st body paragraph. In the 2nd body paragraph, you should write about some bads and, finally, you should give a summary of the two body paragraphs in the conclusion.

In less than 5 minutes, try to brainstorm the positives of studying abroad for the 1st body paragraph and its negatives for the 2nd body paragraph. Write them down in the form of key words and phrases somewhere on your paper as follows:

1st body paragraph (advantages):

open-mindedness

host countries benefit from new talents

2nd body paragraph (other ways):

social conflicts

not easily allowed to get or hold down jobs/inequality

Three precise sentences are enough for an introduction paragraph. As we already know, the first sentence is a general statement about the topic. This is a short sentence sharing the general idea of the essay in a simple and straightforward way:

Technology and modern lifestyle have provided humans with easier and quicker ways of migration.

The second sentence adds a new fact to the first sentence and it can provide the reader with the key points included in the topic:

Some go abroad to work or live and others leave their homeland to study in a foreign country, however, immigration for any purpose may have both positive and negative consequences.

The third sentence should demonstrate your essay plan:

This essay will attempt to illustrate some of them.

Now count the words very quickly and put the number down next to the paragraph. It should be between 40 and 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on writing and counting the words of the introduction paragraph.

Now you should refer to the advantages that you have already brainstormed. The 1st body paragraph should give some goods of moving abroad to live or study:

*Normally, **open-mindedness** could be a positive result of leaving one's country, since immigrants face new societies and cultures, and get acquainted with their unique characteristics. For example, an influx of emigrants who set off annually for my own country, Iran, mention hospitality and propriety as its two main social traits. Furthermore, **host countries may benefit from new talents** among the people who come to live permanently or study there. A good example of this is the U.S. where many experts with different nationalities reside forging a steady relationship.*

Now, count the words immediately and write the number down next to the 1st body paragraph. It should approximately be between 90 and 100 words. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on this.

The 2nd body paragraph, which is about the disadvantages of living or studying abroad, needs to be written exactly according to what you have already brainstormed. Be careful to use the proper linking words like *in contrast* to imply that you are writing about the other side of the coin which is completely different:

*In contrast, **social conflict** between natives and non-natives has increasingly been reported by journalists since two or three decades. For instance, Greece has been facing such struggles for at least twenty years. In addition, newcomers might **not easily be allowed to get or hold down the jobs** they deserve in their new homeland. This may take place especially in the time of economic hardship when a nation faces a severe crisis. Also, such*

economic inequality and social injustice may be rooted from racist movements.

The number of words of the 2nd body paragraph should approximately be between 90 and 100. Now count the words, write the number down next to the paragraph and move swiftly on to the conclusion. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on the 2nd body paragraph.

As you know, the conclusion paragraph is a summary of the two body paragraphs. In this case, two long and short sentences have summarised the main ideas of the two paragraphs in an impersonal way:

*To conclude, although **leaving your country to receive a better education or live a better life** has possibly good results like **broad-mindedness** of the immigrants who may eventually be welcomed by the natives based on their merits, still **clash of ideas and cultural contradictions** can end up with serious ramifications such as **antagonism**. Such an irresistible animosity can probably ruin the mutual understanding and respect between the guests and the landlords.*

As you can see, different concepts used in the body paragraphs as the benefits and drawbacks of moving abroad for living or studying purposes were paraphrased in the concluding sentences. This will show the examiner that you are able to use a wide range of vocabulary for the same topic avoiding repetition.

The conclusion paragraph normally consists of 2 or 3 long and short sentences and is approximately between 40 to 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on this paragraph.

Finally, spend the last 5 minutes on correcting the possible grammatical and lexical errors. Check the articles, singular and plural subjects and their verbs, countable and uncountable nouns, etc.

A summary of Advantage and Disadvantage essay

Brainstorming: prepare a rough plan of writing about the advantages and disadvantages in less than 5 minutes

Introduction: three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a general statement about the topic

a supporting sentence

the general plan of the essay

1st body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some advantages of the phenomenon

2nd body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some disadvantages of the phenomenon

Conclusion: two or three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a summary of the two body paragraphs

Final correction: correct the grammatical and lexical errors in 5 minutes

Model essay 1

What are the pros and cons of public transport?

Public transport system, nowadays, is getting exceedingly complicated along with a rapid growth of human population and also the increasing importance of efficient time management. Therefore, its vital significance in a modern society is undeniable. However, public transportation can play both negative and positive roles in the quality of our lifestyle. This essay will take a look at them and draw a reasonable conclusion.

One of the advantages of using buses and trains is that it can decrease the level of traffic congestion to a great extent, since citizens, especially work commuters, will drive their own cars less. For instance, in my own city, Tehran, which has a population of sixteen million, every day at least sixty per cent of its inhabitants commute to work. Encouraging people to use the public modes of transportation is not a palatable solution to the rocketing problem of traffic jam, but also it can remarkably help decrease the level of pollution through less use of private automobiles.

Turning to the other side of the argument, public transport seems to be often slow and unreliable. For example, in Athens, the buses are always delayed and most of the time you prefer to take a taxi or travel by your own car which definitely is much more comfortable. Another issue is that buses and metro stations in large cities are mostly dirty. Also the trams and buses are so crowded that most passengers may feel like sardines cooped up in a can.

To sum up, although public means of transportation is mentioned as a solution to the volume of daily comings and goings of a city's residents and its pollution levels, its sluggishness and dinginess, in contrast, may lead to some other serious ramifications such as stress and depression.

(299 words)

Model essay 2

What are the advantages and disadvantages of leaving your country to live or study abroad?

Technology and modern lifestyle have provided humans with easier and quicker ways of migration. Some go abroad to work or live and others leave their homeland to study in a foreign country, however, immigration for any purpose may have both positive and negative consequences. This essay will

attempt to illustrate some of them.

Normally, open-mindedness could be a positive result of leaving one's country, since immigrants face new societies and cultures, and get acquainted with their unique characteristics. For example, an influx of emigrants who set off annually for my own country, Iran, mention hospitality and propriety as its two main social traits. Furthermore, host countries may benefit from new talents among the people who come to live permanently or study there. A good example of this is the U.S. where many experts with different nationalities reside forging a steady relationship.

In contrast, social conflict between natives and non-natives has increasingly been reported by journalists since two or three decades. For instance, Greece has been facing such struggles for at least twenty years. In addition, newcomers might not easily be allowed to get or hold down the jobs they deserve in their new homeland. This may take place especially in the time of economic hardship when a nation faces a severe crisis. Also, such economic inequality and social injustice may be rooted from racist movements.

To conclude, although leaving your country to receive a better education or live a better life has possibly good results like broad-mindedness of the immigrants who may eventually be welcomed by the natives based on their merits, still clash of ideas and cultural contradictions can end up with serious ramifications such as antagonism. Such an irresistible animosity can probably ruin the mutual understanding and respect between the guests and the landlords.

(299 words)

Model essay 3

Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of working from home.

In recent times, major advances in technology have increasingly facilitated many people to work from home. Depending on the type of job, this is becoming more and more popular. Working at home, of course, has its own positives and negatives. In this essay, I will try to explore the pros and cons of this phenomenon and draw a reasonable conclusion.

Let starts by looking at the advantages of working from home. One of the positives of sitting home and doing your job from there is that you can spend more time with your family. This will probably create a healthier family space. Also parents can build up a better relationship with their children, if

there are any. Secondly, employees working from where they reside will possibly be able to save the money they pay for commuting to work. What's more, employers can also lower their workplace expenses like electricity, insurance and other overheads.

Turning to the other side of the argument, home-based working people tend to have less communication with their colleagues. This may cause them become less rounded and sociable. In this case, the employers may find it difficult to organize their staff and develop a direct relationship with their personnel. Obviously, lower production level can be a result of such a split.

All things considered, it can be concluded that working from home is not always beneficial. Although it may motivate families to improve their quality of life, it can be harmful to the employees. You need to weigh up the pros of sitting home and carrying out your job from there, and the cons of the gap between managers and their labour force. Personally, I believe the negatives of this working situation eventually outweigh its other benefits.

(290 words)

Model essay 4

What are the positive and negative impacts of migration on the host country?

Nowadays, moving from one country to another country in order to work or study has changed into a controversial issue. There are some advantages and disadvantages associated with this phenomenon and this essay will make an attempt to explore them.

Regarding the positive impacts of migration, it can be said that leaving a country to work abroad might help the host country fill the job vacancies and skills gaps, which can result in economic growth afterwards. Moreover, the young workers entering a new country normally bring energy and innovation boosting the economy and creating cultural diversity to a great extent. This might, in addition, aid ageing population of the host country to fill the pension gap by the contributions of the new young workers who pay taxes regularly.

Turning to the negative impacts of immigration, it might, first and foremost, allow local employers to ignore productivity, training and innovation in the workplace due to reasons such as having workers willing to work for relatively low pay. Furthermore, not only the migrants might be exploited by the job owners, the unrestricted number of incomers, at the same

time, may lead uncontrollably to unemployment and put pressure on public services. Greece is a good example of this. Additionally, the floods of migrants leaving their home country to live abroad might definitely need to be monitored from the security point of view. Finally, large movements of people can facilitate organised crime and people trafficking as well as integration difficulties and friction with the local people.

Overall, despite several economic and cultural problems associated with migration, the host country might benefit from it through more cultural diversification, more prosperous ageing population and less job vacancies.

(281 words)

Practice tasks

NB: Try to use the topic-based vocabulary and collocations (*appendix 2*) at the end of the book to answer each given topic question.

Topic 1: work

Immigration has changed into a major phenomenon in recent years. What are the advantages and disadvantages of this?

Topic 2: countryside

Many people think that living in the countryside could be a unique family experience.

What are the benefits of such an experience? What might its detrimental consequences be?

Topic 3: family

Discuss the goods and bads of having a smaller family in contemporary lifestyle.

Topic 4: Cities

What are the upsides and downsides of major conurbations?

Topic 5: global challenges, environment and species

What are the positives and negatives of greenhouse farming?

Topic 6: health

What are the strengths and shortcomings of health care being provided by the private sector?

UNIT

7: Evaluation Essay

An “*Evaluation*” essay firstly shows how effective, relevant and important is a phenomenon such as a solution or a remedy to a problematic issue. This sort of essay is primarily written to illustrate the benefits of the way a paramount problem is supposed to be resolved.

In addition, an “*Evaluation*” essay is an attempt to represent other remedies or solutions to the same problematic issue as well as other factors which may create the same issue. In fact, an “*Evaluation*” essay might suggest solutions to a problem and causes or even effects of an issue. This is why an “*Evaluation*” essay can probably be considered as a mixture of “*Opinion*” and “*Discussion*” essays and its topic question could possibly be designed in a variety of rather complicated ways, for instance:

How effective can... be? What other ways exist to...?

Is... a true factor of...? In what other ways could... be measured?

In what way is... important? What other ways...?

How can... be measured?

Is this a true indicator of...? In what other ways could... be measured?

Do you think this is an effective measure against...? What other solutions can you suggest?

Do you think it is the best way to deal with...? What other solutions are there?

What benefits are there to...? How can this be solved?

Do you think it is important to...? What measures can be taken to deal with this problem?

How important is...? What other factors influence...?/What other factors should be considered?

Is it important to...? How can this be achieved?

The following topic question is about traditional dress and costumes. It asks you to elucidate how effectively traditional dress and costumes can

connect us to our past and familiarise us with our history and culture. It also asks you to propose other ways in which a country's past might be understood by its current or future residents:

In many countries, traditional dress and costumes are considered effective ways of maintaining links with the past. How effective can traditional costumes be, in this sense? What other ways exist to help citizens connect with a country's past?

An "Evaluation" essay is normally made of four paragraphs. The introduction is used to briefly describe the topic. Then, you should write about the reasons and possibly give short examples for your reasons in the 1st body paragraph. In the 2nd body paragraph, you should write about a few other possible and relevant ways in which the past could be preserved and, finally, you should give a summary of the two body paragraphs in the conclusion.

In less than 5 minutes, try to brainstorm some reasons for the 1st body paragraph and some other ways you think might be helpful to preserve the past for the 2nd body paragraph. Think of how dress and traditional costume can keep us in touch with the past. Write them down in the form of key words and phrases somewhere on your paper as follows:

1st body paragraph (reasons):

*a reminder of cultural or historical background
our past is full of noteworthy traditions and rituals/self-sacrifice and peacefulness
historical and cultural individuality*

2nd body paragraph (other ways):

*cultural norms conveyed to the younger generations
folkloric literature and epic stories/cultural heritage
artistic forms*

As already mentioned, three precise sentences are enough for the introduction paragraph. The first sentence is a general statement about the topic:

It is undeniably crucial for a society to preserve connections with its past.

Although this is a rather short sentence, it should be written in a way that can share the general idea of the essay with the reader, i.e. the examiner.

The second sentence adds a new fact to the first sentence and it can refer briefly to the key points in the topic:

One way of doing this is wearing traditional dress in different cultural occasions.

The third sentence should show your plan:

This essay will look at this phenomenon closely and make an attempt to investigate other possible ways to establish a constant relationship with our past.

Now count the words very quickly and put the number down next to the paragraph. It should be between 40 and 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on writing and counting the words of the introduction paragraph.

Now you should refer to the other ways of maintaining our links with the past that you have already brainstormed. The 1st body paragraph should give the reasons why you think wearing traditional costumes can aid us not to lose our connection with the past. Begin the paragraph using proper linking words such as “*In fact*” or “*Admittedly*”. As mentioned before, linking words give your essay a sense of cohesion if used appropriately:

***In fact**, traditional dress is more than what people wear in special occasions. It might be a reminder of cultural or historical background of a nation. **Additionally**, traditional dress might remind us of the fact that our past is full of noteworthy traditions and rituals, for example the dress Iranians wear during Moharram, a religious ceremony, recalls the importance of self-sacrifice and peacefulness. **Finally**, it can be said that historic clothes are a means of expressing our historical and cultural individuality.*

In addition to what you can see in bold in this paragraph, you can use

different vocabulary to write about the reasons for a phenomenon, for example *is due to, result from, be the reason for, be the upshot of, etc.*

Now, count the words immediately and write the number down next to the 1st body paragraph. It should approximately be between 90 and 100 words. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on this.

The 2nd body paragraph, which is about the other ways of preserving the past in our minds, needs to be written exactly based on what you have brainstormed using relevant linking words.

Regarding other viable ways of getting connected to the past, it can be said that there might be more effective ways in which cultural norms might be conveyed to the younger generations in order to maintain the fabric of the society. First and foremost, folkloric literature and epic stories can largely be handed down to us illustrating a rich image of the cultural heritage in most countries. These literary works partly based on reality embody significant concepts and symbols more efficiently than dress. Furthermore, artistic forms may be other ways of transferring cultural values and traditions. For instance, paintings can reveal the detailed characteristics of the past cultural life to some extent.

The number of words of the 2nd body paragraph should approximately be between 90 and 100. Now count the words, write the number down next to the paragraph and move swiftly on to the conclusion. You should not spend more than 10 minutes on the 2nd body paragraph. You should have spent about 30 minutes of your time by now.

As you know, the conclusion paragraph is a summary of the two body paragraphs. In this case, a long sentence has summarised the main ideas of the two paragraphs in an impersonal way:

*Overall, **although** historic dress might in part play a paramount role in connecting us to the past, **it appears indisputable that** the rich heritage of folklore, legends and arts ranging from visual arts to handicrafts, and from opera to traditional music, could probably act more effectively to link us to the past.*

You should try to paraphrase everything as much as possible. For instance, in this paragraph, “*the rich heritage of folklore, legends...*” is a slightly

different paraphrase of “*folkloric literature and epic stories... a rich image of the cultural heritage*” and “*arts*” is a close synonym for “*artistic forms*”.

The conclusion paragraph normally consists of 2 or 3 long and short sentences and is approximately between 40 to 60 words. You should not spend more than 5 minutes on this paragraph. Finally, spend the last 5 minutes on correcting the possible grammatical and lexical errors.

A summary of Evaluation essay

Brainstorming: prepare a rough plan of writing about some possible reasons and other possible ways, solutions, causes or effects, etc. in less than 5 minutes

Introduction: three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a general statement about the topic

a supporting sentence

the general plan of the essay

1st body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some reasons for the phenomenon

2nd body paragraph: (90-100 words/10 minutes)

some other possible ways, solutions, causes or effects, etc.

Conclusion: two or three sentences (40-60 words/5 minutes)

a summary of the two body paragraphs

Final correction: correct the grammatical and lexical errors in 5 minutes

Model essay 1

In many countries, traditional dress and costumes are considered effective ways of maintaining links with the past.

How effective can traditional costumes be, in this sense? What other ways exist to help citizens connect with a country's past?

It is undeniably crucial for a society to preserve connections with its past. One way of doing this is wearing traditional dress in different cultural occasions. This essay will look at this phenomenon closely and make an attempt to investigate other possible ways to establish a constant relationship with our past.

In fact, traditional dress is more than what people wear in special occasions. It might be a reminder of cultural or historical background of a nation. Additionally, traditional dress might remind us of the fact that our past is full of noteworthy traditions and rituals, for example the dress Iranians wear during Moharram, a religious ceremony, recalls the importance of self-sacrifice and peacefulness. Finally, it can be said that historic clothes are a means of expressing our historical and cultural individuality.

Regarding other viable ways of getting connected to the past, it can be said that there might be more effective ways in which cultural norms might be conveyed to the younger generations in order to maintain the fabric of the society. First and foremost, folkloric literature and epic stories can largely be handed down to us illustrating a rich image of the cultural heritage in most countries. These literary works partly based on reality embody significant concepts and symbols more efficiently than dress. Furthermore, artistic forms may be other ways of transferring cultural values and traditions. For instance, paintings can reveal the detailed characteristics of the past cultural life to some extent.

Overall, although historic dress might in part play a paramount role in connecting us to the past, it appears indisputable that the rich heritage of folklore, legends and arts ranging from visual arts to handicrafts, and from opera to traditional music, could probably act more effectively to link us to the past.

(299 words)

Model essay 2

Some believe that the level of traffic crime can be reduced by

imposing heavy fines on the traffic criminals.

How effective can this be? What other ways exist to tackle this issue?

Over the last few decades, traffic crime has changed into a grave issue and needs to be alleviated urgently. Some experts think that this problem might be solved through punishing those who violate the traffic regulations. This essay will look at the effectiveness of this and will try to propose other possible solutions to traffic crime.

Admittedly, the deterrent effect of levying hefty fines is unquestionable. First and foremost, such fines can definitely assist the police to decrease the level of traffic crime through pushing drivers to be aware of the hassles of careless driving. Moreover, this might act as a warning and alert drivers to be conscious of the dangers of reckless driving, endeavour to be law-abiding and drive more carefully to lessen the possibility of fatal traffic accidents. Finally, drivers mostly make their best attempts to consider the rocketing traffic density while sitting behind the steering wheel if they face stiff fines.

Regarding other possible solutions to traffic crime, the primary way of tackling this is to reduce the traffic density through carpooling, which means to encourage work commuters to travel together if they work in the same area. This can reduce the number of cars on the road to a great extent as well as save drivers' fuel in large, minimise in part their vehicles wear and tear and extremely decrease carbon emissions. Furthermore, the way forward for the government is to bring in new traffic laws and set up zero-tolerance policies in order to take traffic violations more strictly under control.

To sum up, notwithstanding large fines have a remarkable deterrent effect on traffic violators, carpooling might lower the volume of traffic minimising the level of traffic crime and the governmental zero-tolerance policies may aid to have effective control on traffic criminals.

(298 words)

Model essay 3

Is it important to maintain family ties? In what ways can this be achieved?

Good family connections seem to be reinforcing to a major portion of the fabric of the society, nonetheless, there are forces that may pull these bonds apart and create thorny issues both for the families and the whole society. This essay will attempt to look at the importance of such paramount relationships closely and propose other possible remedies for

this potential loss of connection.

In the first place, it is logical to say that family bonds need to be maintained in order to make the family members feel better by receiving trustable emotional support and enjoying happy moments together. This may result in a sort of esteem support which can assist us to feel good about ourselves, validate our good actions and criticise our inappropriate behaviours in a positive space. Additionally, forging deep family rapport might help us develop a sense of network support, meaning that every member of the family feels accepted by the whole family no matter where they live, how rich they are and what is their profession.

Turning to other ways of maintaining family ties, it is important to mention that family connections cannot be maintained and strengthened unless the members make their attempts to establish a two-way effective communication among them. Furthermore, there is no need to exaggerate the bad aspects of family matters. This may create mutual mistrust and end in serious disconnection. In addition, interpersonal family dealings, financial support at the time of hardship and care packages from home might help a family maintain its ties to a great extent.

All things considered, keeping family ties healthy and unspoilt through various sorts of support is quite important, nonetheless, there are other possible remedies such as establishing an effective communication, lessening mistrust by resolving possible problems in a friendly atmosphere and providing each other with a variety of interpersonal support in order to build up a better family relationship.

(315 words)

Model essay 4

Some people think that pay increments and cash incentives can be motivating for the employees in the workplace.

Do you think this is the best way to maximise the quality and quantity of work produced? What other solutions are there?

While some think that work productivity is mostly based on a sense of purpose and training, others believe that salary increase and cash bonuses can get the employees work more efficiently. This essay will look at how work efficiency might increase in line with pay increments and cash incentives and make an attempt to suggest other possible solutions.

First and foremost, the employees will probably feel more focussed in the

workplace if they are paid more and have the possibility to experience a better lifestyle. The staff who have less financial problems might allocate themselves more to their jobs and affect gradually the level of job productivity. Furthermore, workers and employees who receive financial aid from their boss do not have to find a second or third job to fulfil their needs and have naturally the time to go more concentrated through on-the-job training programmes or update their knowledge about their jobs on their own by referring to resources or doing research online. This is how job effectiveness might increase.

Regarding other solutions to this, it can be mentioned in the first place that taking scheduled breaks can in fact help the staff improve their concentration at work. It is important for the job owners to be aware of the fact that taking even short breaks during long tasks can aid the workers to maintain a constant level of performance, otherwise the performance level might decline steadily and this may end up in work inefficiency. Moreover, the way forward the employers is to quit multitasking to order to save time and increase productivity. It seems to be more logical for the personnel to focus on one task and move to the next one after the task is accomplished. This can definitely lead the whole system to a higher level of work efficiency.

Overall, work productivity might be achieved by the employees being financially compensated for what they are doing as well as taking regular breaks and avoid multitasking to be more concentrated in the workplace.

(335 words)

Practice tasks

NB: Try to use the topic-based vocabulary and collocations (*appendix 2*) at the end of the book to answer each given topic question.

Topic 1: countryside

Do you think living in the countryside can be an important way to lead a healthy lifestyle? What other measures can be taken to maintain a balanced way of living?

Topic 2: environment

Some governments have put taxes on the job owners who prefer to use fossil fuels.

Do you think this is an effective measure against climate change? What other solutions can you suggest?

Topic 3: health

Daily exercise is considered to be the best way of being in good health. What other benefits are there? In what other ways could our health be improved?

Grammar Bank

Conjunctions

Conjunctions, connectors or linking words are used to join or connect two sentences, clauses, two phrases or words and help create a complete logically organised meaning and structure in a paragraph. Conjunctions assist a writer to give cohesion and coherence to their writing as a unified whole.

Contrasting transition phrases

having said that

The cyberspace seems to be awash with subterfuge and malware. Having said that, the Internet users do not need to be afraid of every website or any message they receive if their computers are safely equipped with antiviruses and firewalls.

said that

The youth face grave issues in big cities. Said that, parents and the governmental authorities might be able to resolve such serious problems through launching new campaigns to support the rights of young people.

despite what was said

Banning second-hand smoking legally in public places is the first essential remedy. Despite what was said, some believe that smoking should be free everywhere except hospitals and schools.

Confirmation or reinforcement of an idea

actually

Finally, wind power is inexhaustible, meaning that it is actually a form of renewable energy resource such as solar energy.

indeed

It can be mentioned in the first place that taking scheduled breaks can, indeed, help the staff improve their concentration at work.

notably

Evidence shows that immigration has notably increased because of economic and political issues in some underdeveloped or developing countries.

Particularly

Nonetheless serious tendency towards abolition of capital punishment, still the legal systems of many countries are particularly eager for death sentence in case a person is proven to be guilty of murder.

specifically

Specifically, the government needs to bring in new laws against money laundering and human trafficking.

Comparison or similarity**also**

In essence, living or working close to bustling areas and the regions which are full packed of air, road or rail means of transport, and also industrial areas can be the possible causes of noise pollution, which can create more stress and bad sleeping habits drifting in and out of sleep.

in the same way as

Music can help you get focussed in the same way as daily workout or good night sleep.

both... and...

Doing regular daily exercises can help citizens feel healthier both physically and psychologically.

likewise

It is important to realise that direct interactions with targeted individuals and sharing information with other gang stalking victims can be helpful to expose stalking possibilities. Likewise, it seems paramount to encrypt your communications such as emails by, for example, using free email services called Hushmail.

correspondingly

As technology has become more and more developed, issues such as weather and sanitation have correspondingly increased.

similarly

In my view, misconduct of parents or bad behaviours of teachers might affect children's character similarly to those of their peers.

equally

Moreover, dysfunctional families may equally be another reason for why children get a poor education and leave their schools early without earning a degree.

identically

Nutritionally, it is better for infants if the children food companies produce foods based on formulas which are identically the same as breast milk.

as well as

Large movements of people can facilitate organised crime and people trafficking as well as integration difficulties and friction with the local people.

comparatively

Climate change, in my view, goes back to centuries ago, but it has been comparatively rapid over the last few decades.

equally important

Nutritionists believe that following a healthy diet can be as equally important as doing regular daily workout.

in like manner

The most important reason for overweightness is sedentary lifestyle. In like manner, additives such as emulsifiers can cause obesity and gut disease.

by the same token

By the same token, the ever-increasing growth of consumerism can be

destructive, in the long run, to the environment as well as a contributing factor to poverty and hunger around the world.

Giving examples

in other words

Tourists who have learnt English can travel much more conveniently and might have the possibility to communicate more effectively. In other words, tourists with a rather high command of English language have a better chance to interact well with other nationalities.

to put it differently

Immigrants are motivated enough to do difficult jobs or even menial work. To put it differently, immigrants tend to seek their fortune in vocational jobs while natives prefer to do office work.

to put it another way

To put it another way, the way forward entrepreneurs is to channel the youth's energy into creativity and productivity.

as an illustration

As an illustration, being familiar with foreign languages means that they can do research and gain information from a variety of resources other than their mother language.

including

The students newly matriculated at a college should go through a number of prerequisite courses including English language.

Like

The youth can uphold their long-standing cultural traditions like wearing local costumes and performing traditional rituals and songs.

most compelling evidence

The most compelling evidence linking global warming to overuse of fossil fuels are the statistics issued by international environmental-friendly organisations.

Emphasis and explanation

to point out

As many experts have tried to point out, overpopulation as well as ageing population will change into unsurmountable issues in near future.

to demonstrate

Scientists have used a variety of methods to demonstrate the serious danger we are facing regarding global warming and degradation of vegetation.

to emphasise

It is important to emphasise that obesity has changed into a challenging problem, due to reasons such as dependence on cars, unhealthy diet and low level of athletic abilities.

to clarify

It seems paramount to clarify that the more privatised the education system becomes, the higher the cost of getting a university level will possibly be, although the better quality of privatised schools is indisputable.

to explain

It appears crucial to explain that the problem of illiteracy might be solved through setting up free education systems to help the youth get full-time academic or vocational education.

should be remembered

It should be remembered that gaming excessively may result in ramifications like sedentary lifestyle, obesity, poor eyesight and ineffective academic and social careers.

first thing to remember

The first thing to remember, regarding the problem of obesity, is that this issue can definitely limit our youngsters' social skills and future prospects.

important to realise

It is important to realise that those who live next to places which are

stuffed full of vehicles and aircrafts may not be able to sleep or relax well.

Effects and consequences

as a result

On the other hand, some employers think that productivity and efficiency don't seem to be measurable. As a result, they prefer to put their money into tangible programmes such as on the job training programmes to help the personnel achieve better future prospects.

under those circumstances

They also think that, under those circumstances, there will be a rat race to earn more coping with stress associated with overwork.

that is why

An offshore wind farm has the potential to produce up to twice as much power as onshore wind farm and that is why it is considered a more cost effective way of generating electricity.

for this reason

Additionally, being a playmate for our children, pets, for instance cats, could possibly give them a sense of affinity with nature and have, for this reason, a deep respect for wildlife when grown up.

henceforth

Many believe that the government, henceforth, should impose a temporary financial restriction on private companies.

hence

First and foremost, immigration as an international phenomenon can help fill job vacancies and skills gaps. Hence, economic growth can possibly be sustained.

as a consequence

Criminals who are skilled in the field of computer can have easier access to public or sometimes private information of people and turn to crimes like cyberstalking. As a consequence, these criminal activities which are

nowadays quite common in cyberspace have made the Internet largely unsafe for many ordinary citizens.

consequently

The lack of security which is stemmed from being far from home can have a negative impact on their studies and consequently undermine their academic attainment.

thereupon

Consumerist lifestyle has led many societies to a health crisis. Thereupon, many new illnesses have recently appeared which need to be discovered and cured as soon as possible.

therefore

Healthcare along with national insurance can definitely be a key to have a healthy society and therefore psychologically better people who are able to work more efficiently and help the whole society experience more prosperity.

then

To sum up, it is clear that the way forward to overcome our social problems is firstly to find the fundamental and long-term solutions, and then support charity companies constantly by donating a portion of our income to give the impoverished families a hand.

accordingly

Children should learn that their behaviours could have positive and negative consequences accordingly.

thus

The preparatory schools are the paramount part of any person's education. Thus, the teachers of prep schools should be chosen carefully and based on teaching standards.

Contrast and conflict

in contrast

Although public means of transportation is mentioned as a solution to the

volume of daily comings and goings of a city's residents and its pollution levels, its sluggishness and dinginess, in contrast, may lead to some other serious ramifications such as stress and depression.

by contrast

By contrast, the opponents of following the cultural traditions say that, first and foremost, young people will not be circumscribed by traditional thought if they adopt a modern way of living.

of course..., but

Working at home, of course, has its own positives, but we need to be careful about its negatives as well.

on the other hand

On the other hand, some employers think that productivity and efficiency don't seem to be measurable.

on the contrary

On the contrary, it seems to be really rewarding to live in the countryside which is a cornucopia of pleasures and delights.

even though

The local authorities should approve to raise the tax on smoking even though the cigarette companies have made every endeavour to resist it.

nonetheless

Cosmopolitan cities have provided many young people with new facilities, nonetheless, there are problematic issues with which the youth have been constantly struggling.

nevertheless

Many suburban residents commute easily to work via automobiles, buses and trains, nevertheless, the problems of suburbanisation have not been totally tackled.

notwithstanding

Notwithstanding the lack of enough space in metropolises to create

effective railways, it seems that the governments can help people travel faster and cheaper by providing them with more trains and giving them the chance to enjoy a remarkably higher level of safety.

unlike

For example, in some European countries such as France, unlike the US, the government provides the citizens with health care insurance and free education.

while

Some people think that the youth should follow their traditional culture and refuse to accept modern values while others believe that they should have the freedom of choice.

whereas

The ever-rising statistics of juvenile delinquency indicate that the level of education has plunged whereas the level of poverty has plummeted.

albeit

Albeit with some hesitation, many academics believe that forging deep family rapport might help us develop a sense of network support.

besides

Nevertheless, besides the fact that the amount of genetically modified products has been uncontrollably increasing over the last few decades, nutritionists have proposed new ways of getting rid of such foods which are accepted by a portion of the society.

although

Taken as a whole, although many people hold the view that sport must be a crucial part of students' life, I firmly believe that we should give them a chance of picking what they are really interested in and made for.

instead

The government should not rely only on its legal power to tackle such a thorny problem, instead, they might as well attempt to take more humanistic steps.

despite

Despite several economic and cultural problems associated with migration, the host country might benefit from it through more cultural diversification, more prosperous ageing population and less job vacancies.

in spite of

In spite of existing ramifications arising from metropolises such as joblessness, the governments can possibly create jobs to eradicate unemployment.

conversely

Conversely, uptowns contain more local facilities such as shopping malls or mega-centres, upmarket shops and other lovely public spaces with stylish designs and decorations.

otherwise

It is important for the job owners to be aware of the fact that taking even short breaks during long tasks can aid the workers to maintain a constant level of performance, otherwise the performance level might decline steadily and this may end up in work inefficiency.

however

Such problematic issues may have pushed some to think that living in countryside may be healthier and more peaceful than city lifestyle. However, many people disagree with this.

regardless

Unscrupulous job owners take advantage of illegal workers to lessen their expenses regardless of the fact that they are overworked and underpaid.

Condition

if

Employees will probably feel more focussed in the workplace if they are paid more and have the possibility to experience a better lifestyle.

unless

It is important to mention that family connections cannot be maintained and strengthened unless the members make their attempts to establish a two-way effective communication among them.

on condition that

The young people who have been dropped out of school and have not received a proper education could easily become criminals on condition that they are in contact with delinquent youngsters.

in case

Conversely, according to the opponents of this, pets and animals may be a potential source of diseases like cat-scratch disease in case there is no permanent and appropriate hygiene.

provided that

An increase in the birth rate is possible provided that the government provides cash incentives to the couples with more children.

as long as

Winds are caused by the heating of the atmosphere by the sun, the rotation of the Earth, and the Earth's surface irregularities. For as long as the sun shines and the wind blows, the energy produced can be harnessed to send power across the grid.

no matter how

Global warming is unlikely to be completely resolved, no matter how many new laws are introduced by the governments.

given that

The temperature of our planet is likely to decline given that all nations reach an agreement on lowering greenhouse gases and fossil fuels.

even if

Even if every possible safety precaution was taken by the construction company, it will be liable for injuries in the case of committing ultrahazardous activities.

only if

Male workers are allowed paternity leave only if they are going to have a child.

Article: *the*

“*The*” is used when something is already known to us. It is used for things in particular. We use “*the*” to speak about things that everybody knows, for example:

*It seems vital for the government to bring in new laws against traffic crime. Many believe that **the laws** should be strict enough to solve or alleviate such a pressing issue.*

It can be seen that “*new laws*” in the first sentence is, by itself, a general idea. In the second sentence, “*the laws*” shows what we already know. In fact, “*the*” helps us not to repeat the phrase “*against traffic crime*” as we have previously got familiar with it and it is known to us.

“*The*” is not used for things in general, for instance the phrase “*traffic crime*” in the aforementioned sentence does not refer to a specific type of crime. “*Traffic crime*” means traffic crime in general, not in particular.

“*The*” is used to refer to some things like *the sun, the earth, the world*, etc., of which there is only one or a few, things that are unique, for instance:

***The natural world** is being deteriorated by overuse of fossil fuels and industrial emissions.*

Or

*The flora and fauna living on **the earth** are in danger of extinction if human beings will not make a serious decision to lower the level of greenhouse gases.*

Uncountable nouns

An uncountable noun has no plural form and you need to be careful about them when you are writing an academic task two essay. This type of noun only takes a singular verb. They can be used with phrases such as “MUCH”, “A LOT OF”, “SOME”, “AMOUNT OF” AND “A LITTLE”. Here are some examples:

advice: The government needs to get some advice on saving energy from experts.

advertising: A certain amount of advertising appears to play paramount role in companies’ future prospects.

education: The first problem is that many parents cannot afford private education for their children.

entertainment: Artists and musicians should provide ordinary citizens with some healthy entertainment.

equipment: The local authorities need to provide the youth with a lot of sports equipment in order not to turn to minor crimes or any sort of addition.

happiness: There are a number of factors which might help couples end in marital happiness to some extent.

information: The government need more information about drug trafficking before taking any further action.

knowledge: It seems to be common knowledge that travelling broadens the mind.

literature: It is obvious that literature and visual arts are paramount parts of a culture.

money: For larger companies, direct involvement in the money market may partly be cost-effective.

news: The resources of news postulate that over the last few decades the risk of cancer has dramatically increase because of overconsumption of processed food.

progress: Progress in technology has undeniably changed people’s lives dramatically.

publicity: Publicity campaigns need to be launched in order to raise awareness about climate change.

rubbish/garbage/trash: Soil pollution and human health are the main problems associated with throwing garbage anywhere.

shopping: Many think that doing the shopping frequently can have negative impacts on people's personal lives.

traffic: Air traffic congestion across the world has remained controversial from different viewpoints.

travel: Recent superstorms have had a huge effect on the global travel industry.

unemployment: Rising level of unemployment can definitely lead to increasing rates of crime.

work: Recent research has shown that commuting long distances to work may decrease the level of productivity.

Adverbs

Adverbs can help you give more academic tone to your writing. Moreover, it is better to use those adverbs which are common in academic writing style. They can be used in different locations, for example:

Before the main verb

*Many believe that vegetarians **definitely** tend to lead a simpler lifestyle and eat a healthier diet promoting a more environmentally-friendly way of living.*

After the auxiliary and before the main verb

*The number of people travelling in their own automobiles has **uncontrollably** rocketed.*

*Obesity can **definitely** limit children's social skills and future prospects.*

*Such games, if used excessively, can **undeniably** result in physical problems such as the strain on eyesight.*

After the main verb

*In many countries people have moved **increasingly** to settle in cities over the last few decades.*

*Nowadays, the role of pets is becoming **growingly** pivotal in our lifestyles.*

At the beginning of the sentence

***Actually**, bringing up hyperactive children requires a great deal of energy and effort.*

***Obviously**, whether or not we as a society have the willpower, sheer tenacity and perseverance to carry out what is necessary remains to be seen.*

Adverbial phrases of degree like “to some/great extent” and opinion such as “in my view/opinion” can also be used in different parts of a sentence to add a specific meaning to the whole sentence, for instance:

In any events, although neighbourhood watch scheme can be time-

consuming and demanding, it might make the neighbours' community safer, partially prevent crime, make home safe **to some extent**, aid people to share more information with the police and alleviate largely the fear of being victimised by criminals.

In addition, pupils suffering from solitude might lose their self-confidence **to a great extent**.

On the whole, it seems that illiteracy can be a result of poverty, intergenerational transmission of such an inability and poor education system, and it can result in social isolation, lower professional opportunities and unstable financial position.

Although there are many inequities in our educational system, the system, **on the whole**, has had a pivotal role in providing a majority of the society with a good education.

As can be seen above, though some consider the recruitment of local officers to be totally inessential, it appears, **in my view**, that it could definitely be beneficial to the whole security system and its local branches.

Adjectives

Adjectives can be used in different ways in a sentence. They might be used before a noun (*a dramatic impact, an important issue, an insurmountable problem, etc.*) and after a verb (*it is paramount, it seems essential, etc.*).

Some adjectives coming after “*the*” can be used to talk about groups of people. Here are some examples: *the old, the poor, the rich, the unemployed, the jobless, the young, the youth, the mentally ill, etc.*

Sometimes intensifying or softening adverbs are used before adjectives to strengthen or weaken their meaning, for example:

An extremely important issue (intensifying)

Highly unlikely, probable, effective, controversial, problematic, etc.
(intensifying)

A completely/totally/entirely/thoroughly undeniable fact (intensifying)

A slightly worrying issue (softening)

A moderately/rather successful learning process (softening)

Some adjective come before clauses:

It seems paramount that the government launches a supporting campaign...

It is important that the citizens choose a more balanced lifestyle...

It is undeniable that computer games promote violence...

When we use more than one adjective after the verbs *be, seem, etc.*, we bring *and* before the last adjective:

*Receiving a good education seems both essential **and** expensive.*

*The educational programmes implemented by the local authorities need to be both cost-effective **and** beneficial for the youth.*

It is better not to use comma instead of *and*:

*a humanistic **and** effectual programme (not a humanistic, effectual programme)*

Pronouns

It is better to avoid using personal pronouns such as I, me, etc. in order to give your opinion in an academic essay. If you need to give your opinion somewhere in your essay, it is probably more efficient to use impersonal phrases instead of personal pronouns to strengthen the academic tone of your piece of writing, for example, instead of “*I think the way forward is to...*” you can say “*It can be said that the way forward is to...*”

You can use pronouns to avoid the repetition of things you have already mentioned, for example:

The opponents of this think that putting tax on those who overuse fossil fuel may have a negative impact on the wider economy. They claim that...

In this example, the pronoun “*they*” refers to “*The opponents*”.

The most important solution to air pollution is to lessen the volume of traffic jams in run-down areas. This may help...

In this sentence, “*this*” refers to the whole solution suggested.

Additionally, the advocates of equality between females and males at work think that it might be helpful to increase the family income.

In this example, the pronoun “*it*” refers to whole phrase “*equality between females and males at work*”.

Preparatory subject *it*

“*It*” as preparatory subject has a variety of usages which are quite useful in writing an academic essay. There are two ways of using “*it*” in task 2 essays:

It + be + adjective + infinitive

For example:

It is essential to address the issue of air pollution by bringing in new laws against the usage of fossil fuels.

It + be + adjective + for + subject + to-infinitive

For example:

It is essential for the government to address the issue of air pollution by bringing in new laws against the usage of fossil fuels.

You can also use “*it*” with verbs such as “*seem*” and “*appear*”:

It + seems/appears that...

It seems that the government should bring in new laws against the overuse of private cars to address the issue of air pollution.

It appears that the local communities should act independently and launch their own campaigns as soon as possible in order to support environment-friendly movements.

Verbs: singular and plural

Perhaps, the best way of writing an academic essay is to use a combination of long, short and medium sized sentences in order not to be trapped in a sort of monotony and show an impressive diversity. The point is that you need to be careful about the singular or plural verbs you use in long sentences. Before starting a new sentence, make your best attempt to ensure that the verbs used are in harmony with their subjects, for example:

*On the one hand, **those** who **espouse** boarding school as the best choice for children **cite** the various benefits it can bring to them.*

*On the one hand, the **opponents** of keeping animals in close spaces **believe** that it can definitely damage the ecosystem, since **we take** these living creatures out of their natural cycle and **introduce** them forcefully into an artificial habitat. Furthermore, they feel that the **imprisonment** of animals, even in a vast and spacious natural park, **seems** to be against the animal rights.*

***Those** who are in favour of children being constantly in contact with domestic animals firmly **believe** that it can be an opportunity for them to gain a basic biological knowledge about flora and fauna.*

*Additionally, the **advocates** of equality between females and males at work **think** that it might be helpful to increase the family income.*

To have control over singular and plural verbs, especially in complex sentences, shows how grammatically skillful you are and might help your score increase.

Ellipsis

Ellipsis comes from a Greek word and refers to one or more words you can deliberately omit from a sentence, provided that the meaning can still be understandable. There are many different types of ellipsis, but we need to know a few of them which might be used in writing an academic task 2 essay. One type of ellipsis is called *gapping*, which means the words existing in the preceding clause can be left out, for example:

The point is that the government should be strict about the law, and the citizens ~~should be strict about the law~~.

The local authorities should help the society tackle the pressing issue of crime, and the society ~~should help them tackle the pressing issue of crime~~.

In this way, the fabric of the society can alleviate poverty, and ~~it can alleviate~~ addiction as well.

Another sort of ellipsis is *comparative deletion*, which occurs in comparative clauses introduced by *than*, for instance:

The members of the society should feel responsible for the poor more than ~~they~~ currently do.

The first solution looks more efficient than the second one ~~looks~~.

Overall, using ellipsis can help you write a more polished essay through avoiding unnecessary repetition.

Using gerund

Gerunds can play different grammatical roles in a sentence. Firstly, they can be used as nouns, for example:

***Allocating** some resources to gyms and sports clubs subsidies seems to be illogical to some employers.*

***Eating** a balanced diet can affect us both physically and mentally.*

A gerund may also be used as a subject of a sentence before a verb, for example:

*In my view, **exercising** is as important as eating a balanced diet.*

***Running** and **stretching** are two types of really beneficial exercises.*

***Poaching** might put many animal species in danger of extinction.*

*Not **speaking** a few foreign languages **may be** detrimental to children's future career.*

Another way of using a gerund is as an object of a preposition, for instance:

*Another way **of solving** this problem is to allot more resources to cut the amount of red tape.*

*Overall, **in spite of increasing** number of CCTVs and more patrol officers in overcrowded areas, frequent rampages take place every month which seem to be irresistible.*

*Nowadays, many people have serious difficulty **in reaching** their workplace on time due to heavy traffic jams.*

There are some verbs such as *consider*, *recommend* and *suggest* which are usually followed by a gerund and you need to take care of them while writing an essay:

*Some experts **recommend studying** perpetually in order to succeed*

*academically whereas others **suggest enjoying** intervals before recommencing a new phase of studying.*

It is highly important to remember that a verb after a preposition is normally used in gerund form:

*Furthermore, **by using** gyms the workers can probably have a better work-life balance because of their more rewarding leisure time.*

*Some argue that keeping a pet at home might be psychologically beneficial for children. Others see no benefit **in doing** so.*

Gerunds are also used to make reduced [adverbial clauses](#), for example:

*Some believe that moving **while studying** or **doing** their jobs can increase the level of efficiency to a great extent.*

*It is reasonable to lock the doors **before going out**.*

Tenses

The most common tense used in an IELTS academic task 2 essay is *the present simple* to write about permanent situations, facts and accepted truths, for example:

*For instance, such children **have** lower chance of gaining experiences from socialising directly with their peers.*

*First and foremost, one of the main problems of living in big cities **seems** to be the huge amount of waste disposal.*

It is necessary to mention that *the future tense* is not much common in academic texts. We try not to use *the future tense* because it generally tends to predict something in the future and academic texts need to be careful about what they attempt to foresee. The best solution to this problem is to use *modal verbs* such as *may*, *might* or *can* to tentatively predict the possible future if necessary, for example:

*Following a strict diet **may** (not **will**) create a better life quality in near future.*

*New laws against traffic crime brought in by the government **can** (not **will**) alleviate this thorny issue.”*

Thus, there is less sense of predictability and certainty in using such modal verbs and it seems more academic to write about the possible future results of an ongoing action. Nonetheless, *the simple future tense* can be used in the introduction paragraph when you are clarifying your plan, for example:

*This essay **will look** at this phenomenon and have a close look at the opposing viewpoint before drawing a reasonable conclusion.*

Continuous tenses are also used rarely in academic writing. One of the most common continuous forms in IELTS writing task 2 is *present perfect continuous* which is used to show how long a situation or activity has been

going on. It is probably better to use this tense in the first sentence of the introduction paragraph to give the reader a sort of background information about what your essay is about:

*Petrochemical industry **has been facing** a severe crisis since the invention of renewable energy which is going to be the dominant resource of fuel in different countries.*

Although this tense can be used anywhere in the essay, for example:

*For instance, Greece **has been facing** such struggles for at least twenty years.*

*Furthermore, the price of medicine and medication in the market which **has been ailing** for some time seems to be soaring day by day...*

Also, you can use *the present perfect tense* to talk about the ongoing situations which started in the past:

*In many countries people **have moved** increasingly to settle in cities over the last few decades. This **has created** conurbations and urban sprawl from which might arise a variety of problems.*

*Over the last few decades, many cities **have** quickly **grown** into gigantic metropolises.*

Punctuation

Comma is used when a word or phrase is brought in an unusual location in a sentence. You need to use two commas in this case, for example:

*This seems, **in my view**, to be practicable and in this essay I make an attempt to give reasons for my viewpoint.*

*The Internet, **for instance**, can be mentioned as one of these skills while it might aid students to collect the data they need more quickly and efficiently if being used constantly under teacher's supervision.*

Commas are used to separate a series of actions in a long sentence:

This means that they may act more successfully to make the people who flout the rules deliberately abide by the law, help decrease the soaring crime rates more realistically, avoid the unreliable evidence or trumped-up charges which appear to be quite common, and even make an attempt to lessen the level of extenuating circumstances by overturning the verdict in the court of law.

In this pretty long sentence, you can see that four different actions are separated by commas. This has given a reasonable structure to the sentence.

Clauses which are connected with *and*, *but* or *or* can be separated by commas:

*To sum up, it is clear that the way forward to overcome our social problems is firstly to find the fundamental and long-term solutions, **and** then support charity companies constantly by donating a portion of our income to give the impoverished families a hand.*

We do not use comma after *that*:

*The recent researches revealed **that** there is a close relationship between playing violent games and aggression as contemporary grave issues.*

We use comma before a situational adjective clause, which is a clause that describes a situation adding extra information to it:

*To tackle this issue, the government can decrease the working hours, and also provide people with dietary information, **which** may help them have a more balanced diet and therefore lose weight.*

*The solution is for the government to put a tax on private cars, **which** would probably motivate people to walk or use bicycles more and as a result become less overweight.*

Linking words or conjunctions are usually used with commas. We have a variety of linking words used for different purposes. For example, we use *additionally* or *furthermore* to add information to what you have already mentioned:

***Additionally**, the advocates of equality between females and males at work think that it might be helpful to increase the family income, which can probably lead to a higher standard of living.*

***Furthermore**, they might improve their teamwork skills while being a member of a sports team.*

In contrast, on the other hand and nevertheless show contrast between different ideas:

***In contrast**, social conflict between natives and non-natives has increasingly been reported by journalists since two or three decades.*

***On the other hand**, by using gyms the workers can probably have a better work-life balance because of their more rewarding leisure time.*

*The recent researches revealed that there is a close relationship between playing violent games and aggression as contemporary grave issues. **Nevertheless**, this debate has remained controversial.*

The linking words *as a consequence* and *as a result* represent the effects of something or what something may lead to:

Such a freedom of choice may lead to a strong relationship between the

school and the pupils. This, **as a consequence**, can secure children's independence and strength in the future.

Furthermore, they may be used to heat one room of a building without increasing the heat to all other rooms. **As a result**, this might allow homeowners to reduce overall heating costs while conserving energy.

The linking words of chronology and sequence such as *firstly, secondly, in the first place, finally*, etc. are mostly used with comma, for instance:

Firstly, it seems that the city dwellers without the ability to read and write, could feel detached from civilised society to some extent.

Finally, it is important for the government to introduce new amenities into those distant regions to bring safety and contentment into the lives of the people who have migrated to live outside the crowded and polluted conurbations.

Spelling

In editing stage of writing a task 2 essay, one of the most important things every candidate needs to take into consideration is -as Angela Burt says- *to locate words with tricky initial letters*. This could happen in different areas:

Confusing endings

Incorrect	Correct
digestible	digestible
practicible	practicable
accessible	accessible
experiance	experience
extravagance	extravagance
exuberent	exuberant
independance	independence
intelligance	intelligence
obediant	obedient
responsable	responsible
understandible	understandable

Confusing beginnings

Incorrect	Correct
antiscient	antecedent
antisocial	antisocial
forcaite	foraite
forcaat	forcaat
intecating	interecating

Doubled letters

Incorrect	Correct
embarras	embarrass
curriculum	curriculum
goupped	gouped
opencas	open case
droped	dropped
excolent	excellent
determar	determine
transferring	transferring

Plurals

Singular	Plural
analysis	analyses
appendix	appendices
aguarium	aguarium
bazaar	bazaars
Critic	critics
curriculum	curricula
diagnosis	diagnoses
phenomenon	phenomena
datum	data
memorandum	memoranda
reference	references
reference	references
stratum	strata
ultimatum	ultimata
hypothesis	hypotheses
parenthesis	parentheses
stimulus	stimuli
virtuous	virtuous

Conditionals

Zero conditional

This type of conditional sentences is used to speak about general truth and natural facts, i.e. unchangeable phenomena. We can use both *if* and *when* in the if-clause to make zero conditional sentences. In addition, the present simple tense is used in both main and if clauses to talk about factual information:

if + present simple, present simple

If children **move** a lot and play with their peers, they **do not get** fat.

If people **eat** a lot of sweets, they **gain** weight.

Frist conditional

This kind of conditional sentences is used to talk about possibilities in the present or in the future:

if + present simple, future simple

If the governments **do not reach** a consensus about global warming, the climate change **will harm** many land and sea creatures which are the inseparable parts of natural environment.

In my view, **if** the police **does not adopt** a zero-tolerance policy, the level of juvenile crime **will uncontrollably rise**.

Second conditional

We use second conditional to talk about something impossible in the present. This type of sentences is used to speak about dreams and imaginative or unreal situations:

if + past simple, would + infinitive

*If the governments **allotted** more resources to address the global deluge of refugees and immigrants, many homeless people **would survive**.*

*The ozone layer **would not be depleted** to such a great extent, **if** our consumerist society **did not create** so much chemical waste and greenhouse gases.*

Third conditional

We use third conditional to imagine a different past than the one that happened. This is called *hypothetical past*:

if + past perfect, would + have + past participle

*In contrast, we **would not have suffered** from different diseases rooted from air pollution, **if** we **had not produced** so many vehicles or if we **had used** more public transport to commute than our private cars.*

*Firstly, **if** the government **had brought in** new laws, there **would have been** more job opportunities for young job seekers who do not have professional experience.*

Modals

Can

Firstly, *can* is used to talk about *possibility*, for example:

Pollution can partly be alleviated if the government passes new regulations about overuse of private cars or overconsumption of fossil fuels in factories and manufacturing companies.

Additionally, *can* is used to talk about *permission*, for example:

In addition, immigrants cannot get or hold down the jobs they deserve in their new homeland.

Many believe that zero-tolerance policies can be implemented on a national scale in order to eradicate bribery and illegal transactions and create a healthier market place.

Could

Could can be used to talk about *something possible now or in the future*, for instance:

Some believe that women could equally be employed compared to men. Others refuse to accept this idea.

In the meantime, every language a child master could open a new door to widen their knowledge and experience and have a deeper understanding of the world they are living in.

May and might

May and *might* are, like *could*, used to express *possibility now or in the future*, for example:

People who are stuck behind a desk might face physical problems when they get older.

The first benefit of a live-in job is that it might minimise the worker's costs

of living.

Might as well can also be used to talk about something which should be done, about something which is the best option possible, for example:

The police might as well crack down on serious crimes such as unprovoked violence and attack.

Thorny issues such as climate change, unemployment and crime might be escalated by founding new cities, however, urbanisation might as well help curb such problems by putting resources into the environmental-friendly development of technology and innovations.

Should

Should is used to give advice or make a recommendation, for example:

The major entrepreneur should feel responsible to found new businesses on a national scale to lessen the level of unemployment.

Another key point is that urgent actions should be taken by the government to stop the distribution of vital commodities in the black economy.

Clauses

A clause is a set of words which is not complete in meaning. It is a part of a sentence which contains a subject and a verb, but it is not a complete and independent sentence.

There are three types of dependent clauses: *noun clauses*, *adjective or relative clauses* and *adverb clauses*. Each one of these clauses could have a specific function in a sentence, especially in academic type of writing.

Noun clauses

A *noun clause* is basically made of subject, verb, object and some other complementary information and it functions as a noun in a sentence, for example:

What the government should do to resolve traffic issues needs to be legally clarified.

In this sentence, “*What the government should do to resolve traffic issues*” plays the role of a noun, although it has its own subject, verb and object.

We can also use a noun clause as the object of a sentence, for example:

Some people believe that English language shouldn't be used by an overwhelming majority of various nationalities.

In this sentence, the whole sentence introduced by *that* is a noun clause which functions as the object of “*some people believe.*”

We might sometimes use a noun clause as the object of a preposition, for instance:

In fact, supportive parents are profoundly concerned about what their children are going to become in the future and what career they are going to follow.

In this sentence, the whole sentence after the preposition *about* functions as

its object.

Adjective or relative clauses

As mentioned above, a *clause* is a part of a sentence which contains a subject and a verb, but it is not a complete and independent sentence, for instance:

Parents who are overprotective...

This clause is incomplete and does not convey a complete meaning. An *adjective* or *relative clause* functions as an adjective modifying a noun and is a part of a sentence that expresses the additional or necessary specific information and tells us exactly which thing or person the speaker is talking about, for example:

*Parents who are overprotective **may undermine their children's self-confidence.***

*New recruits who are officially asked to hand in a massive documentation **are not professionally experienced and successful.***

Who in a clause is used to talk about people, while we use *which* to talk about things, ideas, etc., for example:

*A consultancy firm usually provides the outplacement services **which are paid for by the former employer and are achieved through practical advice and psychological support.***

*Animal activists protested against the highway **which** was going to be built through the dense forests.*

Another type of adjective clause is called situational adjective clause before which a *comma* is used in order to specify extra information, for example:

*As a consequence, children might be exposed to the danger of obesity, **which can definitely limit their social skills and future prospects.***

Such an anti-humanistic reaction may result in imposing other types of

constraints on human beings, which could probably decrease the number of outgoing citizens who join public venues for smoking.

Adverb clauses

Adverb clauses answer the questions such as *where, when, why, to what degree, under what condition*, etc. They show a relationship and normally begin with or are connected to conjunctions of reason, condition, time, etc. For example:

***Although** many jobs are created every day in the global job market, it is not easy to seek a promising career in art.*

***Notwithstanding** brilliant defence in a court of law, some people who are erroneously charged with crimes are not finally acquitted and have to spend time in.*

Topic-based Vocabulary Bank

CITY LIFE



accident: an event in which a car, a person, etc. is damaged or injured or killed

Reportedly, millions of people are killed in road accidents every year.

adopt a zero-tolerance policy: start dealing with crimes in an extremely strict way

The way forward the government is to adopt a zero-tolerance policy for traffic violations and crack down hard on drug trafficking in inner-city areas.

air quality: how polluted air is

The first reason that makes citizens feel suffocated in the city is the bad air quality caused by the increasing number of cars and lack of green space.

allocate resources to: put money to; allot money to; spend money on; invest in

The rich countries such as the UK should allocate more resources to renewable energy and climate change.

amenity: facilities to help people live more comfortably

Electricity, Internet and heating are the basic amenities of an apartment.

anonymity: when someone is unknown and unidentified

Some believe that introverts prefer the anonymity of life in megacities.

astronomical price: extremely high price

Another ramification is that the astronomical prices of medicine have put the lives of millions of sick people in danger in underdeveloped countries and should be addressed urgently.

atmosphere to breed crime: potential to increase the level of crime

If rundown areas are not patrolled by the police, they are going to change into an atmosphere to breed crime.

ban from city centre: forbid to go to city centre

The government needs to crack down on traffic crimes and ban work commuters strictly from city centre in order to alleviate the problem of air and sound pollution in those areas.

ban from: prohibit from; not let; bar from; proscribe

Some believe that traffic criminals should be banned from driving for a while, other think that their driving licenses should be officially revoked until they learn to respect the traffic laws.

be compounded by: worsened by; exacerbated by

The pressing problem of air pollution can be compounded by traffic congestion and deforestation.

bicycle lane: a part of road that only bicycles can use

In order to develop an appropriate non-motorised transportation system, the way forward for the government is to improve sidewalks, crosswalks, paths, bicycle lanes and networks, develop pedestrian-oriented land use and building design and increase road and path connectivity, with special non-motorised shortcuts.

blare: sound loudly

The sound of loud music blaring out of a car might be fined as a crime by the traffic police.

boom: a sudden dramatic rise

It appears that the boom in social networking has made it easier to be in contact with relatives and friends and run a business through getting your products circulated faster than traditional way of trading.

bring in: introduce a new law

One way to cut down the number of cars on the roads is to bring in a congestion charge, which is a system where drivers have to pay a sum money to be allowed to drive into the city centre.

bursting with: extremely full of

One reason why city centre is more polluted than the suburbs and outskirts appears that it is bursting with goings and comings during the day.

cash-strapped consumers: consumers who do not have enough money and their pocket is empty

Sometimes even the cost of going out is prohibitive for the cash-strapped consumers on average salaries.

catalytic converter: a piece of equipment fitted to a car's exhaust system that reduces the amount of poisonous gases the engine sends out

Using catalytic converter can aid to reduce gas mileage and slow down the circulation process of the emissions leading to a higher consumption of fuel.

Central Business District (CBD): the main business and commercial area of a town or city

One reason why downtown is not as clean as other city areas is that its central business district is always teemed with eager customers.

charge for: fine; ask for money as a punishment

We may be able to minimize the level of climate change if we charge the users of fossil fuels more for polluting the atmosphere and harming the

natural world.

city dwellers: citizens; city inhabitants; city residents

The dangerous conditions of tenements, air and noise pollution, traffic crimes, drug dealing and high costs of living are some of the enormous challenges that city dwellers face.

city planner: someone who plans urban areas

The way forward the city planners is to improve the quality of public transport, usage of advanced technology in city amenities and infrastructure and the design of business climate in order to bring more prosperity and welfare to urban environment and lessen the side effects of urbanisation and urbanism. The apotheosis of this is Adelaide.

civil society: a society based on publicly accepted laws

Pluralism and democracy are the most important traits of a civil society in which the fabric of the society along with the governmental authorities strive to abide by the laws as well as respect the freedom of speech.

clog: block something or become blocked

The first problem is that the overuse of private cars might clog the roads and cause heavy traffic jam.

congested: blocked up with traffic

The main cause of having congested roads is the significantly large number of cars travelling on the roads.

congestion charging: road pricing; charging drivers who want to enter a specific region, especially inner-city

Congestion charging should officially be introduced by the government to tackle the grave problem of heavy traffic jams in specific areas.

conurbation: an urban area consisting of smaller cities and towns

Conurbations seem to be growing in an alarming rate which means human communities could increasingly be endangered by air and noise pollution comparing to some decades ago.

cost of living: prices of everyday items

In some underdeveloped countries the average wages do not increase in line with the costs of living causing people live in abject poverty and depravity.

crack down on: deal more strictly with a problem such as crime

In my view, the government ought to crack down on those who use too much water in order to stamp out the overconsumption of water.

crammed with: completely full; jam-packed with

The public transportation is crammed with people commuting from work in

the afternoon.

cut/reduce the traffic: lower or alleviate the quantity of traffic

First and foremost, the government can develop more means of public transport such as buses and trains in order to lessen the volume of traffic and therefore alleviate the problem of noise pollution.

cycle lane: cycle way; cycle path

Building more cycle lanes in metropolitan cities means to safeguard many cyclists against fatal accidents.

dense traffic: heavy traffic

In morning rush hours traffic is so dense that it might be better for work commuters to use public transportation to reach their workplace on time.

derelict house: an empty house which is in a poor condition

Admittedly, many derelict and dilapidated buildings can possibly be renovated to be utilised for artistic and cultural events.

dilapidated building: a building in a bad condition; an ill-kept building

A part of the government's plan was to demolish several dilapidated buildings on the outskirts, but a group of cultural investors bought them and converted the whole run-down area into a cultural centre.

disrupt: prevent sth from continuing

Traffic flows slowly owing to the fact that rush hour traffic crimes which might as well end up with accidents and injuries. Therefore the way forward the traffic police is to disrupt heavy traffic jam through cracking down on traffic criminals.

divert: change the course of; redirect; recourse

Slow-moving traffic lines can be diverted to other routes in order to make it flow more quickly.

dodgy area: an area which is dangerous

Turning to the possible solutions, the government, in the first place, can ease the way for the undocumented immigrants who mostly live in dodgy areas to become emancipated and live as free legal citizens.

double/triple: become twice or three times as much

Spiralling inflation rate led to the rapid escalation of goods prices and consequently the price of basic commodities eventually doubled.

downmarket shops: shops for the poor

Although downtowns suffer from the lack of local facilities like chain stores and multi-storey car parks, they have extremely lively spaces such as bars and restaurants attracting a deluge of customers every day.

drop litter: throw away the remaining of things people have used
To stamp out the issue of dropping litter, it is better for the government to bring in stricter laws and crack down on it as soon as possible.

dumpsite rehabilitation: restoration of a landfill to normal situation
A dumpsite rehabilitation project might be helpful to reduce the risk of health through taking water and soil contamination under control and definitely can aid to keep the natural environment away from risky pollutants.

dumpsite: a land where people dump their garbage
Perhaps it is better to burn human waste than make several dumpsites which are undeniably harmful to the entire planet, although burning garbage may also end up with air pollution in the long-term.

economic downturn: economic decline; recession
The recent economic downturn caused highly-educated people to do menial jobs to make a living.

economic upturn: improvement in economic activities; upward economic shift; regression
The levels of production and employment are two variables which demonstrate the rate of economic upturn during the boom years.

escalate: increase to a high level
The air and sound pollution in the city centre rose dramatically when the level of car usage escalated.

exorbitant cost: extremely costly
Many young couples cannot afford to buy even a small flat due to reasons such as the exorbitant costs of living in a city which do not let them save enough money.

experience a gain of: go through an increase in
New factories are built on the outskirts of the metropolis and the job opportunities will experience a net gain of 20000 jobs based on the statistical probability.

explosion in: a sudden rise in
Perhaps, the recent explosion in the number of fast food restaurants is one of the main reasons of growing health problems in many modern societies.

explosion: a sudden dramatic rise; boom
Thirdly, the recent population explosion in inner-city is partly rooted from the flood of illegal immigrants and refugees crossing the borders and heading off to the capital city.

extortionate cost: prohibitive expense

If the government attempts to lower the extortionate cost of public transportation, the rocketing level of car usage will decrease to a great extent.

fatalities: occurrence of death by accident

Traffic fatalities have been increasing over the last few years because many drivers do not abide by the regulations and the roads are not standard in most underdeveloped countries.

feel suffocated in the city: have the feeling of living in a narrow space

Due to issues like uncontrolled process of urbanisation, many city residents, nowadays, feel suffocated in the megacities and like to move to the countryside.

found a city: establish a city

Thorny issues such as climate change, unemployment and crime might be escalated by founding new cities, however, urbanisation might as well help curb such problems by putting resources into the environmental-friendly development of technology and innovations.

garbage: waste

Non-biodegradable garbage disposal can be sent for recycling.

gentrification: improvement of a run-down area to match the middle-class taste

Although gentrification is an indicator of economic growth, causes investors to put resources into a dilapidated area, creates job opportunities through renovation of the buildings and the homogenous neighbourhoods get an influx of diversity, some have raised concerns about how fairly the newcomers treat the old inhabitants and how reasonably the new facilities are shared between them.

get stuck: be unable to move

Normally, commuters to work get stuck behind a heavy traffic jam before getting to their workplace.

getting from A to B: go from one point to another

Stress is the first problem associated with getting from A to B in megacities.

green belt: an area of land around a city where building is not allowed, in order to protect fields and woods

The idea of a belt of land around major cities and towns that is reserved for an open space was originally proposed to halt the urban sprawl, and protect the rural environment and historic towns from urbanization. However, green belt policy has been shown to have a number of benefits for both rural and

urban areas as well as for the environment which has made it one of the most effective measures against the current environmental problems and nature conservation issues.

green spaces: areas full of plants and vegetation

There is an urgent need to increase amenities in big cities as well as green spaces.

have huge problem with: being affected hugely by

Despite the fact that most rich modern countries are beautiful and attractive for vacationers, they have huge problem with environmental pollution, crime, depression and obesity.

high-rise buildings: very tall buildings; skyscrapers

The first disadvantage of high-rise buildings is that they are very costly because highly skilled engineers should be employed to design and construct them.

industrial zone: an area on the outskirts full of factories and industrial companies

Cardiovascular and respiratory illnesses appear to be increasingly reported by medical resources due to proximity to industrial zones and highways.

industrial/domestic/household refuse: waste disposed by industry, etc.

Perhaps another remedy to overcome the problem of household refuse is to make the collection system more efficient and cost-effective.

infrastructure: the basic systems and structures that a country or organization needs in order to work properly, for example roads, railways, banks etc.

By moving infrastructure to a service-based model, organizations can focus their time and resources where they belong, on developing innovations in applications and solutions.

ingrained habits: habits difficult to change

Dropping waste has changed into a deeply ingrained habit in many city inhabitants.

just society: a society based on justice

There is strong consensus that equality of opportunity, toleration and freedom are the main characteristics of a just society.

landfill: a place to dispose refuse

Increasing number of landfills around the world can increase the levels of environmental pollution by contaminating groundwater and aquifers and producing methane.

landfill: to bury refuse in order to get rid of it

Nowadays, many companies intend to landfill their old assets and residues of their production line, however, if they were aware of how detrimental this could be to the natural environment, they might reconsider their policies and find a more eco-friendly way of disposing their waste.

launch a publicity campaign: start a publicity campaign

The government along with journalists and activists can launch a publicity campaign in order to raise the public awareness regarding healthy eating and potential harm of obesity.

lengthy delays: being stuck behind traffic for a long time

Traffic congestion in run-down areas usually leads to slow-moving traffic and consequently lengthy delays.

light pollution: the intrusive and intense lights in urbanised areas

Light pollution can have negative impacts on our lives through the intrusive lights falling for example inside our rooms from outside, extra lights disrupting ecosystems and light trespass having adverse health effects on living creatures such as birds and trees.

live in poverty: live in a financially bad condition

Poor decisions made by the governments and cruel exploitations by businesses are, reportedly, the main reasons why half of world population live in poverty.

make compulsory: make obligatory or mandatory

The authorities should take serious measures to make the use of environment-friendly fuels irresistibly compulsory and alleviate environmental and atmospheric pollution.

mall culture: the culture of going and shopping from malls

In a way, mall culture might be considered a sign of globalization in business area, where a huge and bewildering variety of products from different continents are proposed under a single roof.

metropolis: a big populated city

When major conurbations get together, a busy and bustling metropolis is created which is difficult to handle and hosts a variety of ramifications.

neighbourhood deterioration: decline in the value of someone's property because of bad effects of their neighbours or bad situations taking place around their property

Highly crime areas can cause neighbourhood deterioration to a great degree.

on the increase: increasing

The level of traffic crime is on the increase because citizens are getting more and more impatient while commuting to work in rush hours.

out of reach: unaffordable; inaccessible

Although young couples' objectives like buying a house appear to be out of reach, the government has introduced certain financial aids such as getting a mortgage to ease the way for them to have their own house as soon as possible.

overpriced: more costly than normal

The overpriced coastal hotels and country villas stop many citizens from taking regular holidays.

overrun with: occupy in large number

Megapolises and their conurbations are overrun by numerous vehicles creating soaring levels of air and noise pollution.

overwork: work excessively

One of the problematic issues that many dwellers of industrial cities face is that they are in danger of overworking which can cause fatigue and depression.

packed/stuffed full of: full; overloaded; filled with; overflowing

In rush hours, the trains and buses are packed full of workers and students.

pedestrianise: accessible only to pedestrians

Some parts of inner-city were filled with various vehicles until the local authorities decided to pedestrianise them.

people on average salary: people who earn not very high or very low salary

The purchasing power of people on average salary decreases when the rate of inflation shoots up for economic or political reasons.

posh area: expensive area in which rich and upper-class people live

The wealthiest members of the society who usually hold the political power as well live mostly in posh areas.

pressurized: pressured

Owners of nine-to-five jobs feel extremely pressurized when they attempt to work overtime to earn more salary.

priced out of: very expensive for

Teachers and newly married couples seem to be priced out of property and housing market as the cost of real estate soars uncontrollably.

prohibitively expensive: very expensive

Nowadays, it seems to be difficult to get a university degree due to reasons

like its prohibitively high costs.

put pressure on: disturb or stress

The cost of living in megacities has put high level of pressure on citizens and possibly this is why many city inhabitants prefer to move to live in suburban areas or the countryside to be able to save more money.

put sources into: invest in

To solve the problem of traffic crime, the government could put more money into setting up CCTVs at every corner of highly congested and overcrowded areas.

raise the tax on: increase the tax rate levied on

For instance, the authorities of California have approved to raise the tax on smoking even though the cigarette companies have made every endeavour to resist it.

recycle waste: reprocess waste into usable material

Furthermore, spending green products and donation of old clothes, sheets and towels to charities are two additional ways to recycle our household waste more effectually.

refuse dump: careless waste disposal

Evidence shows that refuse dump may gradually lead to insurmountable ramifications such as water pollution and soil contamination.

relocate to the countryside: move out of city

Evidence shows that life in today's mega-cities is so stressful that at least two-third of those currently living in big cities would like to relocate to the countryside or even a small secluded town to live a peaceful life.

residential areas: areas where people live

Primarily, the most effective and feasible solution to potential crimes such as burglary is that residential areas should be patrolled by armed policemen in order to ensure the public safety and tranquility.

residues of farm/industry: remains of farm/industry

An important reason for water pollution is the residues of industries being disposed into sea waters. Factories and power stations appear to be other causes of marine pollution.

rip-off: prohibitively expensive

The extortionate cost of public transport has been considered as a rip-off by many city dwellers as well as one of the reasons why the general cost of living in cities is continuously increasing.

rocket: rise; increase

The increasing number of no-go regions in metropolises is the result of rocketing crime rates.

rubbish: waste

Firstly, the level of solid waste production is increasing in volume and toxicity across the world along with a plethora of other chemicals such as oil disposal and plastic packaging, which definitely have numerous detrimental effects on public health and the natural environment.

run-down area: an poor and dilapidated area

Some of the drug dealers living in run-down inner-city areas are dropouts who have left the nest before finishing their high school and have turned to major crimes.

rush around: be very busy

Our modern society is full of citizens who rush around all the time and are overburdened with endless running errands.

rush hour traffic: heavy daily traffic when people commute to work

Another reason why employees face unwanted series of delays is rush hour traffic which usually is unpredictable and slow-moving.

safety island: an area within a roadway from which vehicular traffic is excluded in order to provide an area of safety for pedestrians or to channel traffic flow

Reportedly, creating safety island in overcrowded areas have decreased the level of traffic fatalities.

sanitation: public health or hygiene

Some postulate that poor sanitation in run-down areas is mainly due to the explosion in urban population and illegal immigration.

sense of community: feeling of belonging to a group of people or a society

Extroverts care more about developing a strong sense of community than introverts due to the characteristics such as sociability, outgoingness and friendliness.

set aside: reserve

If office workers who are mostly stuck behind their desks set even a short time aside for doing workout, the level of overweightness will dramatically decrease among them.

sewage disposal: getting rid of waste from houses and residential buildings

As a matter of fact a great percentage of world's sewage disposal pollutes directly the oceans and lakes and appears to be a serious danger to aquatic

species.

shabby: ill-kept; in a poor condition

Several vagabonds and illegal immigrants reside in shabby cottages and the local authorities need to provide them with accommodation and food to keep them away from diseases and malnourishment.

shoot up: rise suddenly and dramatically

The prices of houses in the countryside shot up as the city dwellers tended increasingly to buy or rent them and be away from city problems.

sky-high price: extremely high price

Although it seems to be unfair to city inhabitants, the sky-high price of living in a city might concurrently hamper the ongoing move of a plethora of villagers migrating to cities.

slow-moving traffic: slow-going line of cars on the road

Slow-moving traffic jam is an upshot of the lack of proper infrastructure such as affordable public transport, insufficient capacity of certain streets and unpredictable weather events.

smog: a portmanteau of smoke and fog

Smog is the mixture of air pollution and natural fog which can make breathing difficult if it rises dramatically.

soar: increase to a peak

The prices of the buildings on the outskirts soared after the government started putting resources into the urbanisation of the suburban areas in order to transform the social structure.

social housing: building houses for low income families

Inevitably, although social housing is sometimes cited to be overpriced, it can be an effectual remedy for the impoverished to have access to affordable houses and experience a more peaceful life. Some urban areas have more than twenty green spaces such as parks, while at the opposite end of the scale are regions with less than three or four green areas.

sprawling urban area: an urban area which is not planned carefully

Statistical evidence shows that the rate of delinquency and lawbreaking is higher in sprawling areas of downtowns and ghettos than areas which are more gentrified teeming with pavement cafes, fashionable boutiques and tourist attractions.

stamp out: prevent

Logical use of traffic wardens might aid to stamp out the level of illegal parkings.

stream of traffic: a lengthy line of vehicles

The steady and troublesome stream of traffic at the central crossroads could be mentioned as the main reason why many people make their best attempts, by any means, to set up their businesses close to suburban areas.

strenuous: demanding; intensive

Some believe that the police should make strenuous efforts to train more policewomen in order to maintain a balance between female and male policemen.

subsidise: sponsor; support financially; pay costs in part

One the other hand, the government can resolve the grave problem of addiction in part by subsidising the public gyms throughout the country and promoting a healthy and balanced lifestyle.

substantial profits: good amount of profit; remarkable profits

There are various possible explanations for the flood of immigrants leaving the countryside to live in megacities. First and foremost, they think about doing businesses with substantial profits and send their earnings back to their families.

suburb: an area beyond a city

Based on evidence, suburbs provide the middle-class with more jobs than urban areas and host more immigrants than inner-city, although a vast number of suburbanites are living under the poverty line.

suburbanisation: a shift of urban population to suburbs

Many suburban residents commute easily to work via automobiles, buses and trains, nevertheless, the problems of suburbanisation have not been totally tackled.

suffer from road rage: get angry at the time of driving

A majority of work commuters in big cities such as New York suffer from road rage while trying to get away from being stuck in traffic jam on the way back home.

surge in: a sudden increase in

Statistical evidence demonstrates that there is an ongoing surge for moving to less crowded areas such as countryside to experience a more peaceful life away from city stress.

take the lead in: be the first to start doing something

The governmental authorities should take the lead in reaching practicable decisions and resolving fundamental problems arising from city lifestyle.

takeaway: takeout; food which is ordered by the customer and is sent to

them by bike delivery

Takeaways are increasingly becoming popular because they are time-saving, easy to make and inexpensive.

teeming with: full of moving people, etc.

The streets are teeming with enchanted people at the annual national celebration.

telecommunication: sending messages through phone or online

Recent telecommunication technologies have facilitated work from home reducing the costs of businesses as well as being environmentally cleaner.

the heart of a city: city centre; inner-city; centre of a city

Disastrous pollution, inadequate housing and despicable crimes can be seen more clearly at the heart of megacities.

the outskirts of a city: margins of a city

The gentrification of the dilapidated outskirts of big cities is seen as essential for providing the residents with basic amenities.

the pace of life: the speed of life

The hectic pace of life and congested roads causing air and noise pollution in the cities are small parts of massive problems that citizens are constantly confronted with.

the rat race: highly competitive human life for wealth and power

It seems crucial for the human beings to save themselves from the rat race and ponder more on their personal and social sustainability.

the roar/rumble/hum of traffic: the loud sound of traffic

The rumble of traffic can be intensely exasperating for the residents living next to congested superhighways.

the volume of traffic: the quantity of traffic

The newly built side roads might help cut the volume of traffic in different parts of the megacity.

traffic calming: do things on the road to push drivers to drive slower and safer

The way forward the government is to introduce traffic calming measures such as CCTVs, imposing hefty fines and building speed humps, vertical deflections, horizontal shifts, and roadway narrowings in order to create safer roads for work commuters and families.

traffic congestion: traffic jam; traffic snarl-up

Longer trip times, lower cars speed and increased vehicular queuing are some of the results of heavy traffic congestion.

traffic flows: traffic moves

It seems better for the police to introduce traffic charging in the areas of city centre that the traffic does not flow in the morning rush hour.

traffic noise: noise pollution caused by traffic jam

The primary reason for moving away from inner-city and living in more peaceful areas seems to be the endless annoying traffic noise caused by congested roads.

trash: waste

The first issue is that based on scientific research most plastic trash will never biodegrade and will remain in the natural environment forever.

turnpike: a large road for fast driving that drivers have to pay to use

Turnpikes are cost-effective, although there is a possibility of deviation from the road because of high speed.

upmarket shops: shops for the rich

Conversely, uptowns contain more local facilities such as shopping malls or mega-centres, upmarket shops and other lovely public spaces with stylish designs and decorations.

urban regeneration: rebuilding and redevelopment of a city; urban renewal; urban revitalisation

Another solution to the problem of unhealthy city lifestyle is to establish an urban regeneration programme to reconstruct the dilapidated buildings and revitalise the quality of social housing in the city centre.

urban: related to a city

Nowadays, air and noise pollution seem to be major issues in many urban areas.

waste disposal: getting rid of waste

Finally, biodiesel production is a new technology which can resolve our waste disposal problem in an eco-friendly way producing no greenhouse gases or carbon emissions.

waste: litter

Some people think that incinerating our waste appears to be the healthiest and most efficient way to dispose of hazardous litter, however, others insist on reprocessing the waste to be reused for household and industrial purposes.

waste-yard: dumpsite

Most developed countries, so called throw away societies, are the main contributors to increasing quantities of waste-yards and polluting the local

environments.

COUNTRYSIDE and FARMING



animal husbandry: breeding animals as a part of farming
Animal husbandry and agronomy are two hallmarks of a prosperous economy.

arable land: land that is suitable for growing crops
For instance, at present 11 percent of the globe's land surface is reportedly arable land and is used in crop production.

breed: bring up animals or plants
It is necessary for farmers to breed chickens in a farm in order to use or sell their meat and eggs.

change of scenery: get away from the city space and go to the place with natural features
It's seems quite refreshing to take regular holidays and go the rural areas for a change of scenery.

country dwellers: people who live in a village
To keep the country dwellers where they belong to the governmental authorities should provide them with more amenities and possibility of education.

dense forests: forests with a lot of trees
Animal activists protested against the highway which was going to be built through the dense forests.

factory farming: use technology to rear livestock indoor and quicker than normal
Highly intensive factory farming can end up with lower quality of livestock reared and higher levels of disease caused by eating those animals and plants.

far-flung village: a distant or remote village
Nowadays, rural children from far-flung villages can socialise and even play net games with children from cities.

fertile: able to produce good crops
Fertile soil provides plants with additional life-Supporting nutrients. Plants not only absorb water, but also many other nutrients from the soil with their roots. Fertile soil provides plants with lots of additional food that supports plant life.

forestry: forest management

The governments need to keep systematic forestry in mind as a scientific way of maintaining the natural vegetation unspoilt in order to alleviate the problem of climate change in part.

hiking trail: a path on the mountains for mountaineers and hitchhikers
There also are countless hiking trails near the lake and in the surrounding mountains.

in the middle of nowhere: in remote places
Some city dwellers prefer to go and live in the middle of nowhere to just get away from the grave problems of city lifestyle.

irrigation: supplying lands with water
Drip irrigation can be used to irrigate the crops and consequently help the farmers save water.

leafy suburbs: outskirts full of trees and plants
Leafy suburbs seem to be pleasant for many work commuters to spend their rest hours and get ready for another working day.

livestock: farm animals
Another way forward is to breed livestock in order to use domestically as well as export.

lush green countryside: countryside which is full of strong and healthy green fields
Lush green countryside should be preserved well against the danger of devastation caused by illegal logging and farming.

organic farming: farming without using chemicals
There is an international consensus on why organic farming is more eco-friendly.

picturesque fishing village: visually attractive and good to photograph
Some agencies organise tours to picturesque fishing villages where tourists will have the opportunity to take some stunning photographs and sample the mouth-watering local cuisine.

quiet backwater: a very quiet place not influenced by outside events or new ideas
Nothing could spoil the tranquility and coziness of such a quiet backwater.

remote viewing: sightseeing by the Internet
Remote viewing has, these days, aided rural dwellers to have access to updated information.

rocky landscape: landscapes full of rock
Some of the Iranian northern villages are exemplars of rocky landscapes

which are teeming with unique fossils.

rolling hills: hills which have a lot of gentle slopes

For instance, my spectacular village is located behind some green rolling hills on.

rural community: a community in a country area

There is a need for better educational programmes in rural communities.

rural depopulation: a situation in which village dwellers migrate to the cities and choose to be citizens

Lack of facilities and luxurious city lifestyle has led to a pressing ramification called rural depopulation.

rural development: the progression taking place in the villages and countryside

The new resources put into rural development projects by the government can definitely stabilise the economy to a great extent.

rural idyll: a peaceful countryside life

The rural idyll remains profoundly evocative and formidable in many industrialized countries.

rural poverty: being poor in a village

The rural depopulation may be rooted from rural poverty.

rustic charm: delightful and simple rural life

First and foremost, many retired people prefer to move to countryside because of its rustic charm and the balanced lifestyle they might experience.

self-sufficiency: being able to provide whatever you need

Firstly, self-sufficiency is one of the paramount reasons a family might move to live in the countryside.

smallholding: a small piece of land for farming

The agricultural zones with smallholdings and farmlands are really fascinating for many city inhabitants.

spectacular panoramic view: open and impressive view

Sometimes a spectacular panoramic view of a valley or a village can definitely be a change of heart for city dwellers.

sun-drenched and sandy beaches: the sandy beaches where the sun shines most of the time

For many people, sun-drenched and sandy beaches are secluded locations where they can take a breath and pull themselves together.

surrounding countryside: the countryside nearby

Our new family hotel is set in a secluded location and all the rooms have stylish furnishings and breath-taking views over the surrounding countryside.

the back of beyond: a remote area

Thanks to new technological advances, living in the back of beyond seems to be more possible now compared to some decades ago.

the rural population: inhabitants of the countryside

Less educational and medical facilities in some villages might be the reason for the decrease in the rural population.

towering cliffs: extremely high cliffs

Latin American countries are full of wild seas and towering cliffs.

unobstructed view: an open view

Aboriginals have accustomed to live in unspoilt natural places and enjoy the unobstructed views.

varied landscapes: a variety of views

Iran has varied landscapes because of its massive biodiversity.

vast meadows: large fields with wild grass and flowers

The government should bring in new laws to crack down on changing vast meadows into agricultural areas.

water bodies: water resources

Rural drought and famine can be catastrophic results of having no water bodies in the countryside.

water scarcity: lack of water

It can be concluded that water scarcity is one of the reasons why villagers exile themselves to put up with the problems of living in the city.

wildlife preserve: wildlife park

Children need to give wildlife preserve a visit from time to time to learn more about natural habitats.

winding footpath: a path with many turns and twists

The archaeological hills were located in the middle of nowhere. You have to walk to reach there passing through a winding footpath.

CRIME



a copycat crime: a crime copies from another famous criminal

Many scholars believe that parents should avoid their children watching crime movies, since they might be encouraged to commit copycat crimes.

a crackdown on crime: strict action against crime

Protestors called an immediate crackdown on political corruption and crimes.

a crime spree: a series of crimes in a short period

The police should not be soft on the catastrophic crime spree which took so many lives and caused a rapidly growing panic in the society.

a crime syndicate: an organised group of criminals

These days, crime syndicates are becoming more and more difficult to deal with due to reasons such as the lack of strict crime prevention programmes and easier and faster ways of committing crimes through the Internet.

a crime wave: a dramatic rise in crime rates

Experts postulate that it is not all doom and gloom and the gentrification of run-down areas may help prevent the expanding crime wave threatening the lives of people.

a grave crime: a serious crime

Some claim that illegally dumping waste should be fined as a grave crime, but others refer to the fact that this issue can be resolved by raising awareness about detrimental aspects of waste disposal.

a life of crime: when somebody makes a living through criminal activities

Some firmly believe that the most important causes of being tempted into a life of crime are the lack of support to families and neighbourhoods, inaccessibility of services, lack of leadership in communities and low values placed on children.

a perpetrator: a moral wrongdoer

The perpetrators of racially motivated segregation and harassment should, in my view, spend time behind the bars based on the seriousness of their wrongdoing.

a sense of guilt: a feeling of having done something wrong

Psychologists believe that the youth who have newly turned to crimes are mostly overwhelmed with a sense of enormous guilt.

a victim of crime: somebody who suffers from a crime

Victims of crimes such as child abuse and sexual harassment do not always report the crimes to the police.

abuse: bad treatment; maltreatment; mistreatment

Many say that the main reason for physical abuse is stress. Nevertheless, provocation by an intimate partner, jealousy and anger are the other important causes of this.

accomplice: crime assistant; partner in crime; accessory; co-conspirator

One way forward for the police is to increase the number of patrol officers in order to tighten security in the regions where criminals act with the help of several accomplices in complicated ways.

accuse somebody of: charged somebody with

Turning to the possible remedies, instead of accusing students of vandalising the school property, the school staff, first and foremost, can hire private security to monitor the school after-hours. Furthermore, it is possible to install a closed-circuit TV camera in large areas such as the school playground and the front of the school, where vandalism is likely to occur. In addition, school directors can create a school-wide program that teaches students to value their school and treat it with respect and show students various acts of vandalism and educate them about the legal and moral ramifications of destroying someone else's property.

acquit somebody of a crime: declare officially that someone is not guilty

It is reasonable for the court of law to acquit suspects of their crimes if they are legally ascertained to be non-guilty based on evidential proof.

acquit: announce officially that someone is not guilty of wrongdoing

Notwithstanding brilliant defence in a court of law, some people who are erroneously charged with crimes are not finally acquitted and have to spend time in.

actionable: giving sufficient reason to take legal action; suable

An actionable misrepresentation entitles the innocent party to rescind the contract unless the court determines otherwise, although it may award damages in lieu of rescission.

affray: fighting in public

Another reason to increase the number of patrolmen is to protect passers-by, especially women and children, against possible aggressive affrays in run-down areas.

aggravated assault: a serious crime that can deprive a person of his life

Statistics show that one of the main problematic issues associated with the

right to keep and bear arms is aggravated assault.

aid and abet: assist someone to act illegally; accessory

The police, in my view, needs to reinforce its patrol officers in order to crack street crime, because nowadays criminals have access to several people who aid and abet their complicated plotting.

alibi: legal excuse

Some politicians take advantage of unimpeachable alibis to exploit the situations for their own benefit.

allegation: accusation, typically without proof

Allegations such as racial discrimination and sexual harassment are quite ubiquitous among different political parties.

an alleged crime: a crime not proved yet

The police cannot arrest or charge you for an alleged crime, because they do not have enough evidence to do so.

an indictable crime: a prosecutable crime

Genocide is an indictable crime and it should be investigated in a grand jury.

arraign: call before a court of law; put on trial for; bring to trial for; take to court for

With higher number of patrol officers, the police might be able to arraign the juvenile culprits who threaten the lives of many defenceless citizens.

arson: deliberately setting fire to property

Arson-related crimes might cause property damage as well as irreversible physical or psychological harm.

assailant: attacker

Evidence suggests that mass shooting events have increased over the past few years and the way forward for the police is to train ordinary citizens to be able to better protect themselves against possible assailants.

assault and battery: verbal and physical attack

Assault and battery, as grave crimes, can result either in imprisonment, significant fines and probation or in anger management classes as a way of rehabilitating.

be against the law: be illegal

Based on the new law passed by the government, it is against the law to introduce non-native plant and animal species into Australia.

be caught on CCTV cameras: be recorded or taped on CCTV cameras while committing a crime

Some analysts claim that CCTV surveillance can provide the citizens and

residents with the sense of security as well as lowering the cost of such a tendency towards being secured. Furthermore, it is considered to be a great deterrent for potential criminals who are afraid of being caught on CCTV cameras. Additionally, it can be necessarily useful for post-incident investigation for the police. Finally, it should be mentioned that CCTV cameras are nowadays more affordable and easier to manage even for city inhabitants and small shopkeepers.

be charged with offences/crimes, etc.: say officially that someone is legally guilty of wrongdoing

Given these points, it is obvious that those who are charged with any kind of crime should face punishment depending how serious is the crime they have committed.

be driven to crime: turn to crime

In any event, although family upbringing, economic crisis and lack of unemployment are among the main reasons for the youth to be driven to crime, effective crime prevention strategies such as youth awareness programme for education and reducing the drug availability have been successfully developed and implemented over the last decades.

be guilty of: be blamed or responsible for a crime

One of the main causes of school vandalism is teachers' misconduct towards their students. As a consequence, the students do not respect their school as their second home.

be in the wrong: be blamed for a something bad

Firstly, based on officials' reports, young wrongdoers are not always in the wrong all by themselves and there are others family and social factors such as peer pressure and family breakdown having negative impact on them.

be inside: be imprisoned; be jailed

The proponents of imprisonment as an effective punishment believe that being inside might protect the society from criminal wrongdoing though isolating those who deserve such retribution from their family and friends. They also think that being jailed as a deterrent stops the criminals re-offending while they are locked away and ensures that the law is respected and upheld. Furthermore, spending time in a jail gives offenders the great chance to reflect on their actions and gives them time to reform their behaviour.

be sentenced to: be given a punishment

Turning to the possible disadvantages of capital punishment, it is important

to know that after the death of the person who was sentenced to death, relatives and friends can suffer from psychological problems such as depression as well as the people involved in the process of execution who might feel deeply guilty for what they have done. In addition, sentence to death is not generally a strict deterrent to crime while it costs the government and the tax-payers too much money. Finally, there is always the possibility of punishing the wrong people, which cannot be undone at all.

be soft on crime: not act strictly against crime

After years of uneasy compromise with the Democratic Party and being politically cornered, the republicans are now making remarkable endeavours to be soft on their nominee's allegations in order not to lose the power again in the political system.

be to blame: be responsible for a wrongdoing

I strongly agree with the idea that the youth should not always be to blame for minor crimes and this essay will support my viewpoint.

be tough on crime: act strictly against crime

On the other hand, the proponents of capital punishment say that the local authorities should appear tough on grave crimes like aggravated assault, forgery and corruption for the sake of social security.

black economy: illegal commerce or trade

Additionally, in order to take black economy partially under control and alleviate its ramifications, the governments need to prohibit the use of paper money and encourage citizens and businesses to use electronic money which is more traceable in the case of underground economic activities.

black market: illegal commerce or trade

First thing to remember is that the government should alter certain regulations and let the customers buy the illegal commodities in a free market in order to minimise the number of people who buy unlawfully from black market.

breach of ethics: breaking the moral rules of a profession

Nowadays, breach of ethics that every member of a profession needs to uphold can have serious legal consequences.

break-in: forced entry to steal things

One possible way of preventing break-ins during your working hours is to redesign the curtains in order to completely cover the windows and make the interior space of your house totally invisible for the passers-by or to move the expensive items out of view as much as possible in order not to unwittingly

lure thieves onto your property.

bribery: pay illegally to get something done

As Shown above, bribery can be alleviated in part by creating transparency and openness in government spending, cutting red tape and deploying smart technology.

bully: threaten

Recent researches depict that a large percentage of high schoolers experience a sort of gender-based bullying which teachers find it pretty insoluble because of the lack of security facilities.

burglarise: break in a building and steal things; burgle

First and foremost, to avoid being burglarised it is good to make your home look occupied all the time. This makes it difficult to break in. In addition, it is safer to lock all the outside doors and windows before leaving the house or going to bed. Furthermore, in case you leave for an extended time, it sounds smart if you leave the lights on in order to deter the potential thieves. Finally, it appears to be wise to ask for your mail, newspapers or flyers deliveries while you are at home. This may lure the burglars away from your house to a great extent.

capital crimes/offences: crimes or offences punishable by death

Some argue that death penalty for capital crimes can reduce the number of serious crimes and deter criminals to commit violent crimes whereas others think that capital punishment for such offences seems to be racist punishing the poor and condemning the innocent to die.

capital punishment: death penalty; legally authorised killing
Abolitionists and human rights activists believe that capital punishment is a completely inhuman and degrading treatment of wrongdoers and criminals because it violates the natural human right to life.

carjacking: stealing a car by force

Turning to the possible solutions to carjacking, it is extremely important, in the first place, to lock your car doors and keep the windows up. In addition, it is logical not to leave valuables in sight inside your car. Furthermore, for night travellers, it seems vital to keep the driveway well-lit and unobstructed not to be trapped in unknown areas. Finally, it appears to be essential for the families travelling together to avoid trouble spots and have their cell phones on all the times in order to maintain a two-way means of communication.

charge somebody with: accuse somebody of

The local authority that used defamatory statements on the president was

charged with public scurrility and denunciation.

child abuse: serious physical or emotional harm to a child; child maltreatment

In order to address the issue of child abuse, many scholars suggest parents to learn the facts and understand the risks, minimize the opportunity through having a close eye on our child, talk to their children about what they might tend to keep secret and stop overreacting about any sign of abuse.

commit a crime: carry out a crime

Frantic characters distraught with fear and anxiety might be in danger of committing serious crimes.

convict somebody of: accuse officially somebody of

The burglar who broke into a museum and stole priceless jewellery was finally apprehended and convicted of robbery.

convict: find somebody guilty of a crime

Some postulate that petty offenders who commit crimes such as public intoxication and trespass should be convicted and put in to spend time.

corporate crime: crime related to companies and businesses; corporate fraud

It is obvious that if a business fails to meet regulatory standards, the government can use regulation to prevent them from engaging in criminal activities. Such interventions or strategies targeting corporate crime are typically focussed on legal restraints which might sometimes impose draconian punishment to induce corporate managers to act legally and responsibly.

corrupt: willingness to act dishonestly

Unscrupulous logging companies backed by corrupt officials have attempted to make endless profits from illegally cutting the trees.

corruption: fraudulent act, especially bribery

Despite the efforts of natural activists and journalists, the implementation of policies passed regarding climate change has been hampered by the non-stop corruption of political authorities.

counterfeit: fake

In order to lower the risk of forgery and fraud, businessmen, celebrities and politicians need to have signatures which are hard to counterfeit.

crime figures: crime statistics

Over the last decades, crime figures have depicted strong criminal tendencies towards dealing and using drugs as well as forming crime syndicates to trap

young women into prostitution.

crime prevention: stopping crime

Obviously, it is important how precisely the police anticipate, recognise and appraise the risk of offences to initiate a crime prevention project and have a knock-on effect on the current life-threatening crime wave on the outskirts.

criminal conspiracy: when two or more people agree to commit almost any [unlawful act](#), then take some action toward its completion

Simply put, knowledge of a crime is not enough to get you thrown behind bars. For instance, just because your friend tells you he is going to [burglarize a house](#), does not mean you are part of the criminal conspiracy to burglarize it.

criminality: an unlawful act

Soaring rate of criminality might be considered as a serious social impact which can create a sense of panic and destroy social security.

culpable homicide: killing somebody without intention; involuntary manslaughter

According to me, law enforcement agencies should establish zero-tolerance policy towards serious crime, except those such as culpable homicide which are legally considered as forgivable.

culprit: criminal

Nowadays, it is clear that keeping culprits in prison is extremely expensive. This is the reason why it seems better for the authorities to rehabilitate them and bring them back to a healthy life.

cut the level of crime: reduce crime level

The first possible way to cut the level of crime is to strictly focus on prevention, meaning that the conditions that draw people into criminal activities should be prevented through a really systematic and integrated approach towards the cooperation of the governmental and private responsible bodies.

cybercrime: criminal activities done online

Given these points, it appears that cybersickness and cybercrime are the paramount predicaments the Internet users are continuously confronted with and addressing these thorny issues involves persuading people to be more extrovert, and educating people to reduce their susceptibility against cybercrime.

cyberextortion: extortion through the Internet

After all, business owners might be able to largely safeguard their work

against cyberextortion via ensuring their systems have appropriate firewall and antivirus, having data breach prevention tools and protecting their business with insurance coverage designed to address cyber risks.

cyberfraud: deceiving people through the Internet

Additionally, to tackle the problem of cybercrime, a viable solution for the authorities and experts is to raise awareness about how cybercriminals act and in what ways the victims can resist to be vulnerable to cyberfraud.

cyberstalking: following someone online to abuse them

Secondly, criminals who are skilled in the field of computer can have easier access to public or sometimes private information of people and turn to crimes like cyberstalking.

cyberterrorism: online terrorism

In addition, criminals use the Internet to sell illegal products or for different forms of intimidation and coercion such as cyberbullying and cyberterrorism.

debauched: dissipated; showing overindulgence

I firmly believe that people, nowadays, need to be more conservative about their budget rather than being debauched and frittering their available resources away.

defamation: publication of a false statement to destroy or damage someone's reputation

Good examples of defamation are speaking frequently and widely about the low quality of foods in a specific restaurant, spreading unfounded rumours about a colleague's sexual relationships and making libellous disparaging remarks to a well-known person.

defame: say bad things about somebody else and destroy their reputation

Additionally, in order not to be sued for defaming someone else, it is recommended to be aware of what you are saying as well as act ethically. Furthermore, you need to express what is based on true facts and you have the possibility to prove them if necessary. Finally, the paramount measure we need to take is to control the meaning at the time of speaking.

defraud: cheat people to get money from them

These days, organised criminal groups make their best attempt to obtain money from their victims in a variety of ways such as defrauding them through mail or email.

delinquency: minor crime

Reportedly, the ever-rising statistics of juvenile delinquency indicate that the level of education has plunged whereas the level of poverty has

plummeted.

deliver the verdict: announce officially the legal decision about an accused person

Unfortunately, not every civil trial ends in delivering a clean verdict. It is better, in such cases, to declare a mistrial.

denunciation: public defamation of someone

The unscrupulous denunciation of both past and present governments' activities by the presidential candidates can result in a chaotic political situation.

despicable: vary bad; hateful

On the other hand, the opponents of capital punishment argue that the legal authorities should not take draconian measures in order to resolve even despicable crime.

detain: arrest

After the terrorist attack, the police made attempts to detain the suspects hiding in the run-down inner-city area.

deterrent to/for/against: something to discourage someone to commit a crime; disincentive; inhibitor; dissuasive

The police should use more traffic patrols in high-crime areas as deterrent to traffic crime and crack down on traffic violations.

disorderly: behaving badly in a public place

Reportedly, the police arrested some of the drunk and disorderly youth in the run-down area before they can destroy any public property.

dissipate: have too much fun in a harmful way; overindulge

Children with abnormal upbringing might show dissipated behaviours when they are grown up and squander away whatever inherited money and property from their parents.

do time: spend a certain time in jail; spend time behind bars

On the other hand, the opponents of doing time feel that imprisonment appears to be quite expensive while it might help the prisoners educate each other in new criminal areas. Such schools of crime, in addition, aid most inmates re-offend on release. Obviously, that is why doing time does not bring about far-reaching reforms. On the other side, the families of the criminals suffer from such a separation. It, therefore, seems quite possible that relationships breakdown while a family member is spending time in.

driving under the influence (DUI): driving while being drunk

Impaired vision and hearing at the time of driving under influence might

have a profound effect on driving skills reducing concentration, vigilance and consequently reaction times. In addition, driving under influence can make the driver feel more relaxed and drowsy, which may cause them to fall asleep at the wheel.

drug runner: drug dealer; drug smuggler; drug trafficker

Turning to the possible tribulations, it can be said that drug runners cause the society face massive health problems, which might take a huge toll on the economy. For instance, the costs of treatment for addicts and law enforcement can put a major impact on the wider economy.

embezzlement: stealing money from somebody's workplace

Circumstantial evidence makes it seem likely that embezzlers in many cases try to falsify the records and take small amounts of money repeatedly.

excoriate: criticise or censure severely

Although the right to excoriate the government has internationally been accepted, there are countries in which the writers and journalists who criticise the authorities severely are considered as outlaws and put into prison.

expropriate: take something illegally from someone

Nowadays, cyberstalkers can sometimes expropriate original ideas and sell them as their own at high prices.

exterminate: massacre a large number of people in order not to exist anymore; extirpate; root out entirely; destroy completely

The nature and core reason for exterminating the Jews by the Nazis called Final Solution still remains unclear and needs to be clarified collecting more palatable historical evidence.

extortion: getting something illegally by force

A viable remedy for the victims of money extortion is to avoid sharing unnecessary information online or offline in order to alleviate the risk. Another solution is to send or receive money through trustable money-transfer services.

fault: weakness; flaw; something wrong with something

One of the great faults which may lay with parents is that they make their children think they are too well or always the best. Such children will not possibly be able to communicate effectively with other members of the society when they are grown up.

felonious assault: attacking someone in a very serious way

The enforcement of recent gun control laws could have decreased the rates of felonious assault if ratified by the congress.

felony: a serious crime

Felony sentencing can include penalties such as incarceration in prison, probation, punitive fines, community service and rehabilitation.

fight crime: prevent crime

Another way of fighting crime is to concentrate on gun control. The way forward the government is to stem the flow of illegal guns in order to impact armed violence.

find somebody guilty of: accuse somebody

The legal investigation found the officially convicted burglar guilty of murder as well.

fire-raising: arson

As a very serious crime, fire-raising, if it happens in a large scale, might have disastrous environmental effects like deforestation and degradation of vegetation.

forensic: the scientific ways of finding out about a crime

Over the last few decades, forensic evidence has shown that felonies such as villainy and illegal prostitution have continuously increased due to poverty and social injustice.

getaway: escape; breakout; disappearance

Thanks to the advances in information technology and intelligent services, criminals can rarely make getaways after committing a crime and are immediately apprehended by the police.

Grievous Bodily Harm (GBH): serious physical injury caused by a criminal act

Crimes resulting in grievous bodily harm should, in my view, be punished strictly to alleviate the possibility of their recurrence.

guilty: having done something wrong or broken a rule

Based on new laws brought recently in by several countries, even multinational companies should definitely be deemed guilty if their overconsumption of fossil fuels and environmentally detrimental chemicals leads to air and water pollution.

heinous: very shocking; tragic

Some insist that heinous crime might partially be tackled if only the government takes draconian measures.

heist: robbery

Despite what was said, the police did not have enough clues in the series of art heists by an organised criminal gang.

hit-and-run: hit someone in an accident and scape without helping them
To recapitulate, hit-and-run riders and drivers can be arrested and punished more possibly if the police increase the number of CCTVs on the outskirts as well as in less crowded areas.

homicide: murder; manslaughter
Having said that, one viable remedy for the survivors of a homicide might be the use of psychological or psychiatric methods to compartmentalize reviewing of the trauma.

hostage: a person kept to force others to fulfil a condition
It can be said that people who have been taken hostage might adjust back into their family and work if they receive appropriate medication, live in a safe and secure environment while protecting their privacy, connect to loved ones and have an opportunity to express themselves publicly through

illegitimate: illegal
Over the last few decades, the rights of illegitimate children have been controversial in legal system and still leads to serious discussions and debates about how these rights should legally be defined in comparison to legitimate offsprings.

illegitimate: not allowed or acceptable according to rules or agreements
There should be various campaign launched by the activists to make the government prohibit the illegitimate use of fossil fuels.

illicit activities: illegal and secret actions
Essentially, the governmental authorities should decide to proscribe illicit trade in stolen cars and bikes.

immoral: morally wrong
There is a consensus among legal authorities that it is immoral to plagiarise other researchers' work and benefit from their findings.

impeach: question the validity of someone or something; call into question; raise doubts about
In the first place, widespread governmental corruption such as briberies or improper use of national resources can definitely push the congressmen to vote unanimously in order to impeach the president.

incarcerate: imprison
The basic idea of rehabilitation through imprisonment is that a person who

has been incarcerated will never want to be sent back to prison after they have been set free. It is hoped that an inmate's experiences while locked up will leave such a lasting impression that a former prisoner will do whatever it takes to avoid a second term.

incriminate: make or cause somebody appear to be or look guilty of a crime; lay the blame on somebody

Initially, it seems logical for the married couples to have a peaceful talk at the time of disagreement rather than quarrelling and incriminating each other.

indict: accuse officially

Some insist that the criminals who are indicted with drug allegations should be arraigned and put to spend time in jail while many human activists believe in rehabilitation of such offenders.

inequity: injustice

Although there are many inequities in our educational system, the system, on the whole, has had a pivotal role in providing a majority of the society with a good education.

inmate: prisoner

Many believe that solitary confinement is a flawed and unnecessary method of punishment that should be prohibited in the prison system. Scientific research shows that solitary confinement or administrative segregation can have negative impacts on inmates owing to reasons such as prolonged deprivation of social interaction as well as sensory deprivation.

inquest: a judicial inquiry

An inquest is held after the suspicious death of a victim in order to clarify the causes of the crime.

inquisition: asking questions in an unpleasant way

If parents change their normal way of asking questions about their children's relationships into a sort of inquisition, they might lose their trust.

interrogate: question to get information about a crime

Normally, the police interrogate wrongdoers who are officially indicted with serious felonies such as cyberbullying and child abuse.

joyriding: stealing a car and driving it so fast and dangerously

Many young criminals turn inevitably to serious crimes such as drug trafficking and murder after having joined the fun of joyriding and shoplifting.

juvenile/youth crime: criminal activities done by young people

The possible reasons for juvenile crime can be classified into two groups. The primary causes of youth crime might be social challenges such as social exclusion and unemployment. Moreover, poor integration of immigrant families to dominant culture which is rooted from poor linguistic skills due to segregating housing policies may persuade the youth to turn to crime. The secondary causes of criminal behaviour might be related to family issues like parental neglect which has its roots in alcoholism and lack of time owing to overwork to achieve a higher living standard. School leavers with low qualifications and credentials as well as those dropped out of educational system might turn to minor and then major crime because of their joblessness in order to have higher social status.

larceny: theft

The more the inflation rate rises, the more cases of crime such as larceny and identity theft are observed and reported by official resources.

lawbreaking: criminal act

Poverty and inequality, in my view, are the prominent factors resulting in lawbreaking.

lawlessness: lack of legal control

Low education and political populism appear, in my view, to be the root causes of lawlessness and social chaos.

libel: written defamatory statement

A libel published in the media can easily harm the character of a well-reputed citizen and can definitely be considered as a serious crime.

low life: having a life full of criminal activities

All things considered, it can be said that families and schools have vital and active roles in preventing the youth from turning to minor crimes and eventually low life through providing them with a good education.

malfeasance: illegal action

The lower the level of education is, the higher seems to be the level of malfeasance among the youth.

malicious mischief: wilful destruction of another person's property

Malicious mischief implies the intentional destruction or damaging of the personal property of another, from actual ill will or resentment towards its owner or possessor.

malpractice: professional mistakes which can be legally charged

Non-standard medical treatments might provide grounds for charges of malpractice.

misappropriate: take something from someone dishonestly; embezzle
In contrast, some managers who had the assets of a company under their stewardship made sometimes their best attempts to misappropriate the funds to their own benefit

misdeed: an illegal action
Corporal punishment for past misdeeds is banned in many countries because evidence shows that it can lead to more serious psychological issues.

misdemeanour: minor crime
Vandalism and prostitution cannot be punished seriously because they are legally considered as misdemeanours.

misdoing: bad action
Voters can't be bothered to look closely enough to find misdoings, while politicians trumpet their every success

mugging: attack and rob in a public place
Research evidence demonstrates that poverty and lack of good education are the predominant reasons for street crimes such as mugging and burglary.

nefarious: criminal
Some postulate that nefarious activities such as exploiting public funds to finance drug trafficking should be banned to be a part of movies in order not to drive the attention of the youth to low life and criminal wrongdoing.

neighbourhood watch scheme: when neighbours take care of each other's property in order not to be victims of possible crimes
In any events, although neighbourhood watch scheme can be time-consuming and demanding, it might make the neighbours' community safer, partially prevent crime, make home safe to some extent, aid people to share more information with the police and alleviate largely the fear of being victimised

obloquy: strong and offensive public criticism
The congress asked the newly-elected president for proof of his obloquy unleashed on immigrants and his defamation of the religious minorities.

obscenity: abusiveness or offensiveness of a speech, image or writing
Exposing children to obscenity and impropriety of any kind in public or private places might legally be considered as criminal.

offense: crime
Some scholars say that the government should enforce strictly the law that forbids the use of contraceptives and make it a criminal offense in order to address women's health issues.

onus: blame

It is important to remember that the onus is on the police to get trained about the nature of minor and major crime and feel responsible to alleviate the crime levels.

open prison: a prison which is less restrictive than ordinary ones

Some argue that open prisons are more effective than usual ones because they seem to be less costly and easy to establish while requiring fewer staff.

organised crime: a planned group of criminals

In either case, it is obvious that organised crime can affect people's lives negatively by threatening their security through violence and disrespect to human rights and eventually jeopardising the economic and social development of the world.

pernicious: very harmful

Some scholars think that the pernicious effects of crime can only be alleviated by cracking down on the offenders and meting out severe punishment.

petty crime: small and unimportant crime

Reckless driving and disorderly conduct are good examples of petty crime which are not strictly punished.

phishing: taking someone's personal information illegally for unlawful purposes

The first paramount remedy for a serious cybercrime like phishing is to use antispam software to minimise the risk of identity theft and consequently financial loss. Another solution is to consider unknown emails as spams. This can lessen the possibility of any access to your personal information.

pickpocket: steal from people's pockets

Regarding the possible remedies, it appears primarily to be better for the travellers or commuters to limit what they carry in their wallets and have a small amount of daily money with them to outsmart the thieves as well as not to give them the chance to pickpocket. Secondly, it seems logical to carry their wallets in their back pockets to have everything under control in different situations such as an overcrowded train or local market. Thirdly, it is reasonable to avoid keeping valuables in the outside pockets and backpacks or leaving bags on chair backs or under seats in restaurants or coffee shops.

prove somebody guilty: confirm that somebody has done wrong

Nonetheless serious tendency towards abolition of capital punishment, still

the legal systems of many countries are particularly eager for death sentence in case a person is proven to be guilty of murder.

public nuisance: destruction of public rights

First and foremost, smoking in public places should be legally considered as public nuisance by the police.

quell: end a violent situation; put down a situation which is full of disturbance

The police, in my view, should not quell the violence or social unrest by force.

racially motivated crime: crime caused by racial problems

Reportedly, the rate of racially motivated crime is on the rise in Britain after the Brexit. Statistic evidence shows that religiously and racially motivated [crimes](#) have increased by more than 40% since 2012. Many believe that the great cause of this is uncontrolled immigration.

rampage: run riot; run amok

In spite of increasing number of CCTVs and more patrol officers in overcrowded areas, frequent rampages take place every month which seem to be irresistible. Reportedly, the police authorities postulate that the terrorists are the ones who go on rampage and create stress and panic.

recidivist: a criminal who returns to crime after being punished

Some firmly believe that recidivists should be sentenced to capital punishment if they return to their past serious illegal activities. Others find this legally problematic because it can destroy their human rights an chance of rehabilitation.

rehabilitate: restore o normal life

Research results have consistently shown that time spent in prison does not successfully rehabilitate most inmates, and the majority of criminals return to a life of crime almost immediately. Many argue that most prisoners will actually learn new and better ways to commit crimes while they are locked up with their fellow convicts. They can also make connections and become more deeply involved in the criminal world.

remand in custody: detain or keep in prison

The young criminal was immediately remanded in custody until a sentencing hearing or a trial will take place.

re-offend: commit crime again

Regarding the causes of re-offending it can be mentioned that released criminals are hardly accepted by communities which may create further

social isolation. Furthermore, the setbacks freed offenders suffer in finding jobs, renting apartments or getting education make them socially feel cornered. Additionally, people with criminal records find it really difficult to find educational opportunities, and are often deprived of financial aid due to their records.

rubbing shoulders with: spending time together, for example in jail

On the other hand, it is frequently reported that sex offenders and serial killers rubbing shoulders with murderers and rapists in prison might exchange information about their criminal activities and transfer their criminal experiences to juvenile offenders.

scurrility: offensively abusive

It is the undisputable duty of the police to have stricter control on those who show scurrility and ribaldry in public places which can be detrimental to families and children.

scurrilous: bad things about someone to ruin their reputation

His scurrilous lecture on Democratic Party did not destroy their reputation, but enhanced it immediately.

shoplift: steal from a shop

Frist thing to remember is that the use of cameras in shops and supermarkets might help decrease the number of vandalism and shoplifting.

slander: tell lies about someone; defame someone; blacken someone's name; libel

False accusations such as slandering can result in a simple fine or spending time in prison depending on how serious they are.

sleaze on the TV: immoral behaviour on the TV

Turning to the possible effects of immorality on TV programmes, first and foremost, children and the youth may imitate the sleaze on the TV. Secondly, there is a great possibility for the children to learn aggressive attitudes and behaviours from imaginary belligerent characters. Moreover, desensitisation can be another negative effect of violence on the TV, meaning an increased callousness towards victims of violence. Finally, by watching immoral TV programmes, children might suffer from an exaggerated fear of being victimised by violence.

solve crime: find a way to deal with crime

Furthermore, in order to solve crime we need to know that crime and violence are going virtual these days and cyberspace is a new domain for criminal activities ranging from the use of social media to project force to

recruit would-be members of extremist groups.

speeding: driving faster than the speed what is legally permitted

In the first place, to tackle the issue of speeding it seems palatable for the commuters to leave earlier in order not to feel rushed and pressured, for instance, to get to work. Moreover, travellers need to figure out the fine amount for speeding to be psychologically aware of the financial consequences of your speeding issue. Eventually, those who travel a lot should probably buy a slower car which is cheaper and less costly because spends less fuel comparing to faster cars.

stalking: following and threatening another person which is considered as a crime

It is important to realise that direct interactions with targeted individuals and sharing information with other gang stalking victims can be helpful to expose stalking possibilities. Similarly, it seems paramount to encrypt your communications such as emails by, for example, using free email services called Hushmail. Another key point is that face-to-face conversations are much safer than online contacts and can limit the possibility of being shadowed by criminals.

stand trial for a crime: be judged in a court of law

The accused that are not physically or mentally ready to defend themselves properly against allegations and understand the consequences of the proceedings in the court of law are not legally competent to stand trial for their crimes.

statutory offence: a punishable crime

Aggravated burglary, indecent assault and drug trafficking offences are some the good examples of statutory offences.

street crime: crime which takes place on the street

Street crime is caused by a combination of individual and external factors. Some external factors include social circumstances, such as poverty, degraded urban environments, lack of social support and gang activity.

subterfuge: deception or trickery to achieve one's goals

The cyberspace seems to be awash with subterfuge and malware. Having said that, the Internet users do not need to be afraid of every website or any message they receive if their computers are safely equipped with antiviruses and firewalls.

swindle: get money from people by cheating them

By and large, although cybercriminals have found new ways of swindling to

take financial advantage of their victims, it is possible to minimise the risk of being victimised by safeguarding their personal computers while surfing in the Internet as well as being aware of new forms of possible cyberattacks.

tackle a crime: solve a crime

There are a number of ways in which the police can tackle crimes. The first solution is to raise public awareness about how socially detrimental can be minor and major criminal activities.

take into custody: arrest or apprehend

Many postulate that the best solution to increasing rates of crime is to take criminals into custody and stop them roaming free in the society, however, others think that there are more humane ways of dealing with offenders.

tax evasion: paying little tax

Economic statistics depict that tax evasion can diminish the earnings of a state and consequently cause the government spend less, borrow more money and have grave problems to take evasive action and combat the budget deficit.

the crime rate: crime levels or statistics

Clearly, social circumstances such as poverty, degraded urban environments, lack of social support and gang activities are the main causes of increasing crime rates, however, unfair rulings and improper correction system sometimes are the reasons why people, especially the youth, enter a life of crime and end up in prison.

to crack crime: to solve crime

On the one hand, the proponents of social resolution of crime in underdeveloped countries postulate that the most effective ways to crack crime are to reduce poverty and inequality along with providing the society with employment opportunities.

traffic fatalities: the number of deaths on the roads

In the first place, the drivers need to follow the rules of the road and speed limits as well as avoid using their cell phones while driving in order to reduce traffic fatalities. Moreover, the police should improve signage and lighting on the roads such as rural highways and suburban areas to minimise the number of deaths while driving. Furthermore, it is paramount for bad intersections and roads to be redesigned to alter the dynamics of traffic and save lives. Finally, drivers are always advised not to drive under the influence of drinking or feeling nervous.

transgression: behave immorally and antisocially

Occasionally, transgression might result in a sort of self-punishment which is rooted in a feeling of remorse.

turn to crime: start to commit crime

In a broader context, the youth who tend to turn to crime can be prevented provided that their parents, teachers and the local authorities use non-violent language to communicate with them and help them resist against peer pressure or come out of gangs before committing major crimes. Moreover, such a problematic tendency can possibly be alleviated if their parents intervene early in their childhood through non-violent communication.

ultrahazardous activity: extremely dangerous activities done a person which may cause injury to others

Even if every possible safety precaution was taken by the construction company, it will be liable for injuries in the case of committing ultrahazardous activities.

unconstitutional: against constitution

The apotheosis of independent court of law is the case in which the federal court announced that the new executive order for travel ban is unconstitutional and should be halted immediately.

under-the-counter drugs: medicines sold illegally

One of the increasing illegal activities is related to under-the-counter drugs which are sold without prescription to the customers.

unethical behaviour: immoral behaviour; unprincipled behaviour

Doing shoddy work, lying to hide mistakes and badmouthing colleagues are good examples of unethical behaviour.

unlawful act: illegal act

The federal court judges banned the executive order which was carried out by the administration as an intended unlawful act.

unprincipled: immoral; dishonourable; morally careless

Admittedly, unprincipled social behaviours are deeply rooted in the person's upbringing and level of education.

unscrupulous: dishonest

Unscrupulous job owners take advantage of illegal workers to lessen their expenses regardless of the fact that they are overworked and underpaid.

vagrancy: live and beg in the street

In order to address vagrancy and assist the poverty-stricken and homeless, there is an urgent need for more cooperation between the governments, non-governmental organisations, religious bodies and public and private sectors

towards the better allocation and utilisation of government expenditures and human resources to serve and assist those in need as well as build efficient and monitored half-way houses, drop-in-centres and support systems.

vandal: a destroyer of public property

Firstly, businesses owners can keep areas around their factories or companies well-lit in order to make it difficult for vandals to commit their acts of vandalism without being seen. Secondly, unbreakable security glass and fixtures designed to foil vandals and prevent them from accomplishing this task can be as effective as surveillance cameras against amateur criminals who commit vandalism. Finally, it should be mentioned that the presence of night patrol officers can be a serious deterrent for the criminals who attempt to vandalise people's property under the cover of darkness.

vandalism: deliberate destruction of property

The most efficient way to address school vandalism might be to build up a good rapport with the students. Students who respect their school will never vandalise it.

vilification: defamatory speech or writing

It can be said that the nonstop vilification of presidential candidates may undermine the public faith in the whole political system.

villainy: criminal act or behaviour

On the other side, proponents of capital punishment say that the criminals who commit villainies like infanticide should be sentenced to death.

war crime: criminal activity during war

For instance, war crime tribunal should crack down on cruel behaviours at the time of war.

white-collar crimes: governmental or business nonviolent crimes

Reportedly, bank fraud, money laundering, blackmail and counterfeiting are some types of prevalent white-collar crimes.

would-be criminals: potential wrongdoers

Some firmly believe that the police should take action against the murderers. They think that death penalty can definitely dissuade would be criminals.

wrongdoing: illegal behaviour

Some believe that the major reasons for criminal wrongdoing are joblessness, poverty and universal access to cyberspace.

EDUCATION



absenteeism: regular truancy

Another possible remedy for regular absenteeism from school is to attempt to build up and develop an effective rapport between the pupils and the teachers.

academia: academic environment

The collaboration between highly-qualified academia researchers and industry experts as a priceless mixture of science and experience can be richly rewarding and result largely in new worthwhile technological findings.

academic credentials: academic qualifications

These days, job seekers need to provide their potential employers with academic credentials closely related to the job they are applying for.

academic tenure: a permanent academic post

It appears to be extremely difficult to acquire academic tenure nowadays.

all-round education: an education in several areas and subjects

Well-endowed schools normally offer an all-round education because of their well-qualified teachers as well as their financial security and stability.

alma mater: the school one attended once

Some teachers have no interest on teaching in their alma mater because of their bad memories regarding their teachers' misconducts.

audio-visual: use of slides, videos and sound in a classroom

The use of audio-visual materials in the classroom can increase the quality of teaching through keeping the students more engaged in the lessons and enlivening their imaginations, but it can be cost-prohibitive as well.

background reading: the books someone has already read about a topic or subject

Giving a lecture doesn't necessarily mean to give a summary of your background reading. You have to present your findings and criticise the current thought about the given subject.

be to blame: say that it is someone's fault

I firmly believe that school teachers and staff are to be blamed for a growing phenomenon called truancy.

better-off' parents: richer parents

A two-tier system aids the better-off families to sign up their children in well-endowed schools.

boarding school: a school students live and study in

Some believe that the students who follow their academic career in a boarding school seem psychologically to be more independent and self-confident whereas others say that those students have a less successful academic performance in comparison to the students studying in a daily school due to reasons such as depression and lack of concentration cause by loneliness and homesickness.

bursary: financial aid to a student to study at a university; scholarship; award; grant

In spite of the economic predicament, the governmental organisations keep awarding bursaries to the students coming from less well-off families.

bursary: scholarship; grant; award

Another way for the governmental schools is to award bursaries the children with extraordinary ability in order not to waste their talent and time.

bury yourself in your books: study nonstop; give all your attention to your studies

Some students bury themselves in their books for a short time to do the final touches and prepare the final parts of their dissertations. This may affect the quality of their academic achievements.

carry out research: do research

Although scientists have carried out several research projects on the mysterious role of placebos in recovery of many patients, they seem to be at the beginning of their scientific exploration.

civics: a subject about the rights and duties of citizenship taught in schools
Another way of helping people to become proper citizens is to teach them civics in schools.

cloze test: a test in which the student are asked to fill in the blanks with their own relevant words to make the given incomplete text proper and understandable

Cloze tests can help the learners improve their grammar and vocabulary skills.

coeducation: students of both sexes being educated in the same classroom
Another reason why coeducation is more efficient is that it can create a more communicative atmosphere between both sexes and aid them to develop their communication skills with the opposite sex.

collegiate: relating to college

Collegiate life might seem stressful at the beginning, but very soon the

students can overcome their problems through studying, socialising and doing sports activities.

comprehensive school: a middle school for all students

One of the advantages of comprehensive schools is that they do not sign the new students up selectively and this might give all the students a chance to succeed.

compulsory schooling: education required by law; obligatory or mandatory education

All the young members of the society seem to be benefited from compulsory schooling through gaining the basic knowledge such as written communication they need to live in a civilised modern environment.

computer-literate: somebody who has enough computer knowledge

Nowadays, job seekers need to be rather computer-literate in order to get a job.

continuous assessment: uninterrupted evaluation of academic performance

Continuous assessment emphasises on a wide variety of examination techniques and provides an on-going true image of a student's skills apart from last minute cramming.

core subjects: main or compulsory subjects of a curriculum

It is better for the new students to focus on core subjects such as English Language and The Principles of Management to be successful in the following semesters when more applied courses are offered.

corporal punishment: hitting a student

Corporal punishment should be legally forbidden, otherwise can have substantial effects on students' academic performance.

correspondence course/education: a course done by a student at home and sent to the teacher by mail or email; distant learning

Correspondence education can help professionals, dropouts and housewives follow their unfinished academic career.

course: a series of lessons

There is a certain amount of social pressure and regulation that goes with a traditional classroom. Students have to show up on time and with homework done and they are guided through every step of their course, reminded of upcoming assignments and tests and there is a structure and routine to follow.

crash course: intensive course

Migrant practitioners need sometimes to take crash courses in English in order not to lose a job opportunity in an English speaking country.

crib: copy illicitly from another student

Psychologically speaking, most students do not like anyone to crib the answers from them in the examinations.

cultivated: well-educated

Cultivated intellectuals are the most important wealth of a society, but the underdeveloped countries are losing them through a process called brain drain.

curriculum reform: alterations made to school programme

Curriculum reforms could be positive if carried out based on the students' needs.

degree: a qualification given by a university

Moreover, dysfunctional families may equally be another reason for why children get a poor education and leave their schools early without earning a degree.

demonstrate an ability: show an ability

The students who have demonstrated an extraordinary ability to solve the insolvable mathematical problems can be sent to special schools in which they can flourish and develop their talent.

discipline: having control on one's behaviour

There are many types of disciplinary problems in the classroom, things like bullying, disrespect, aggression, and defiance. Though some classroom management issues result from teacher's lack of a plan, many come from issues students bring with them into the classroom.

distance learning: doing homework at home and sending it to the teacher in order to be assessed and marked

One of the problems of distance learning is that the physical absence of the instructor means that they may not be available to guide or support the student when they need it most. The availability of counsellors depends entirely on the program your student is enrolled in.

distinguished scholar: successful, respected and admired scholar; an academic; a learned person

The seminar has invited the most distinguished scholars to give lectures on autism and autistic children.

doctorate: the highest university degree

Your analytical skills will sky rocket. This really depends on the type of PhD

you pursue, but it is a given that you will learn to sharpen your analytical skills, and will then be able to apply these skills to subsequent ventures.

drop out: abandon a course before the end of the semester

The youth who turn to minor crimes under peer pressure tend to drop out of school and probably get involved in major crimes afterwards.

dropout: a school leaver

Firstly, dropouts leave their schools due to reasons such as incompatibility with the academic space and inability to complete the course requirements.

dyslexia: a disorder which involves difficulty in reading and spelling

There appears to be some evidence linking dyslexia of left-handed people to their extraordinary abilities.

educationalist: teaching expert

We need to hire professional educationalists to alter our teaching system and ameliorate the situation for our students.

educative tool: an educational tool

In addition, role-play can possibly be mentioned as an educative tool which can accelerate the process of building up a good rapport between the classmates and the teacher.

elitism: a way of thinking in which a small portion of the society has the power to do important things

Elitism espouses the idea of putting a majority of social fabric aside and let experts carry out the paramount tasks such as science and politics.

encourage into teaching: support somebody to choose teaching career

A survey showed that secondary schools take on a grave challenge in finding new teachers and it is, in my view, the duty of the official authorities to take an urgent step to encourage gifted people into teaching.

enrolled on a course: register officially for a course

The employees were all enrolled on a course related to their job to increase the quality of their work.

equality of opportunity: a situation in which everybody has the same right and chance

The entrepreneurs should ensure the equality of opportunity for all their employees to create a friendly space in the workplace.

extracurricular: in addition to normal courses

Extracurricular activities such as sports and music can help the students become more relaxed and concentrate on their studies.

extramural: courses for part-time students

University extramural courses are suitable for full-time workers who want to gain some academic achievement and professionally get promoted.

field trip: science trip

Going on a field trip can provide students with first-hand information about the importance ecosystems and wildlife.

finals: a set of examinations at the end of every semester

Supplementary lessons can aid the students to sit and pass the finals with lower stress levels.

first-hand knowledge: the knowledge which has been produced for the first time

Journalists with first-hand knowledge and experience of working in war zones can provide the audience with the details of possible war crimes.

gifted children: talented children who are extremely intelligent

The upbringing of gifted children is more challenging than ordinary ones.

graduate: obtain a degree

It seems quite important for a student to know what they are going to do after being graduated.

heuristic education: self-education through discovery and personal experience

Historical evidence shows that many great scholars have developed their sense of self-expression and problem solving with the help of heuristic education.

higher degree: a degree given after the first degree

The most-measured benefit of getting a higher degree is of course graduate salaries, and evidence confirms that higher levels of education do result in higher earning power.

home-school: education at home

Home-schooled students might have communication problems when they are going to get a job and open up socially.

in-depth critique: careful and detailed examination of something

By presenting such a comprehensive lecture, he showed an in-depth critique of several reliable resources he had cultivated as well as his palatable conclusions.

indicate: show

Recent research indicates that the great melting in Arctic and Antarctic has caused the sea levels undergo a continuous rise over the past decade.

ineducable: incapable of being educated

Mentally disabled people and children suffering from psychiatric disorders are normally classified as ineducable at mental health clinics.

inflict corporal punishment: punish someone physically

Although some people think that inflicting corporal punishment can deter mistakes from recurring, seems to be affordable method of discipline and time-saving, others say that it might affect families' esteem negatively and appears to replicate violence and therefore should be totally banned.

inherent in the educational system: an inseparable part of educational system

The problems regarding education such as elitism are inherent in the educational system.

intercollegiate: between colleges

Every year all the schools of the region plan together to go through intercollegiate sports event which appears to be a quite fascinating event for many students and their teachers.

interdisciplinary: combining two academic activities into one

Interdisciplinary teaching takes advantage of various fields to create a more engaging and fascinating space for the students.

inter-library loan: a system through which a library borrows a book from another library

Inter-library loan can help solve the scarcity of some important resources.

invigilate: watch or supervise candidate in an exam; proctor

One of the advantages of invigilating examinations is that it might avoid exam malpractice and let the candidates take the exam in a healthier atmosphere.

know the subject inside out: master the subject; know the subject very well

In order to know the subject inside out, one way for the students is to refer to other students and analyse each lesson together in order to gain a deeper understanding of the subject.

lack of formal education: not having academic education

The possible way for the government is to provide the required facilities for the people who suffer from the lack of formal education to receive an appropriate academic education.

learn off by heart: memorise

Teachers who work in a memory-based education system are asked to push the students to learn the lessons off by heart. This can definitely result in

irreversible waste of talent and time.

less well-off family: poorer family

Children from less well-off families cannot receive the same education that children from better-off families do.

lettered: formally educated; knowledgeable; well-rounded; well-learned; well informed; well-read; erudite

To acquire and secure an academic tenure, you need to gain several academic credentials and qualifications.

life science: bioscience; scientific study of living organism

It is a good idea to bring simplified life sciences to primitive schools or even kindergartens in order to familiarise children with flora and fauna.

lifelong education: long-term or constant education

Lifelong education for all the members of the society is a challenge which still remains controversial and should be addressed by all means.

literacy and numeracy skills: able to read and count

The report suggests that students should improve their literacy and numeracy skills in order to gain more academic achievements.

look up to one's teacher: respect one's teacher

Those who believe in communicative approach say that students shouldn't necessarily just look up to their teacher and take lessons only to fulfil their duty. Teaching process is mutual and should be built on an effectual rapport between teacher and students.

matriculate: be enrolled at a university

The students newly matriculated at a college should go through a number of prerequisite courses including English language.

meet the entry requirements: be eligible to get enrolled

It is better to ease the way for the university applicants to meet the entry requirements more easily and receive the education they deserve as soon as possible.

mixed ability teaching: teaching students of different abilities together

The first advantage of mixed ability teaching is that it gives different students a chance to bring their entirely distinctive perspectives into the classroom and make the lessons richer.

mnemonics: something which can help us remember other things; a way to improve or jog one's memory

Mnemonics might help us remember difficult things, because they are short, succinct, and easy to remember.

overqualified: having more qualifications than necessary to get a job
First and foremost, highly-educated job-seekers have trouble finding a job. Everyone tells them that they are overqualified and quickly become dissatisfied with the job.

past papers: exam practice tests from previous years
Past Papers are recommended to those who are going to take a challenging exam like IELTS.

pedagogy: teaching or the study of teaching
Regarding the proponents of communicative language pedagogy, it has to be said that this teaching method is more students-based and the phenomenon of learning is a reciprocal process.

perpetuate inequalities: make unfair situations continue to exist
The main issue to be tackled is an education system which perpetuates inequalities continuously.

plagiarism: stealing other people's ideas and words
Plagiarism is another problem associated with many books published nowadays. To solve such a grave issue it is the responsibility of the government to crack down on plagiarists and pass new stricter laws to support the copyright owners in the marketplace.

play truant: stay away from school without permission
Thirdly, other students involved in minor crimes may have negative effects on their classmates causing them also to play truant.

preparatory school: or prep school; a school for children between the ages of 3 to 13
In my view, preparatory schools are the paramount part of any person's education. Thus, the teachers of prep schools should be chosen carefully and based on teaching standards.

prerequisite course: a course needed to be passed before another one
Freshmen need to pass some prerequisite course like pre-math and principles of statistics in order to get prepared for the coming semesters.

present one's findings: show and describe the information someone has discovered through studies, research, etc.
The prominent instructor presented his conclusive research findings about climate change at the university.

protégé: trainee; disciple
Teachers would normally like their protégés to go to a higher level and make their best attempt to motivate them to study harder and learn more

effectively.

provide a rationale: give reasons and explanation

Students should learn to provide a rationale for their research findings and back up their conclusions with reliable and irrefutable evidence.

rector: the person in charge of certain colleges and schools

Probably one of the problems of educational system is that the responsibilities of university rectors and senior administrators are defined ambiguously.

reduce stress on teachers: bring the level of stress down

It is undeniable that cutting the number of hours teachers work at school means reducing stress on the.

remarkable mental agility: capable to thinking very quickly and intelligently

She answered the questions of Brain of Brains with remarkable mental agility and became the unrivalled winner of the contest.

revise/cram for exam: study shortly, intensively and assiduously for exam; swot

She has to revise for her math exam.

role-play: use a specific situation to teach a subject

One way forward is to use role-play in the classroom to enhance the learning quality of the pupils.

room for improvement: possibility for a positive change

There could be a significant room for great improvements in their work, if child prodigies are treated and taught well.

rote learning: learn off by heart or memorise something than understand it

The first disadvantage of rote learning is that it does not let the student gain a deeper understanding of the subject.

seat of learning: a school where students receive education

Take Harvard University as an example, which is one of the world's most prestigious seats of learning.

secured a place: get enrolled as a student

Her father secured a place for her at a prestigious school to read medicine.

selective school: a school which chooses its students with special criteria

It seems to be impossible for many students to enter the selective schools.

self-taught: self-educated; self-instructed

Some of the artists and outstanding scientists are largely self-taught.

set texts: texts that must be studied for examination

Hamlet and Antigone are prerequisite set texts all students in Theatrical Studies Department should read them carefully.

show considerable initiative: have a remarkable plan

The extraordinarily gifted students show considerable initiative in doing completely new types of biological experiments.

sign up for a course: enrol for a course

More practical students can sign up for some vocational courses at a local university and start a profession after receiving their qualifications.

single-sex school: a school in which only boys or girls attend; same-sex school

There is no acceptable evidence that single-sex schools can boost academic achievement. Additionally, some scholars think that same-sex schools might cause gender intensification.

sit an exam: take an exam

Cramming just before sitting an exam can possibly affect the quality of a student's academic achievement.

skip school: leave school secretly

Health problems and death in the family probably are two reasons why a student might skip school.

special needs/aided education: education for disabled people

Special needs education is design to solve the problems of students who struggle with physical or mental disorders.

speed up learning process: accelerate or quicken learning process

Visual and audio aids can speed up learning process most of the time.

student body: the whole group of students in a school; student union

Another way for less communicative students is to join and hold responsibilities in student body.

studious: studying a lot

There is no evidence that introvert studious youngsters are more intelligent than those who are extrovert and clumsy.

submit a report: give a report to a teacher or instructor

The students submitted their reports of the statistics of traffic crime and lack of education.

termly: each term

Students from impoverished families should prepare themselves for the termly examinations as well as work on a part-time basis.

tertiary/higher/further education: education at a college, university etc.

Tertiary education includes universities, colleges and professional institutes which present academic curriculum.

the three Rs: the three basic skills, i.e. reading, writing and math

Efficient literacy and numeracy skills can normally lead to more effectual three Rs and consequently better academic achievement.

underclass man/woman: a high school or college student who is going to finish his studies in less than two years

The underclassmen are preparing themselves to enter a higher level of education as well as taking more family and social responsibilities.

well-endowed schools: wealthy schools

Well-endowed schools receive their financial resources from various social entities.

FAMILY



abduction: kidnap

Child abduction appears to be a grave issue in modern societies.

adolescence: a period in which a young person is developing into adult, normally between 12 and 18 years old

Psychologically, boys lose their self-confidence during adolescence period.

adolescent: a young person who is developing into adult

Adolescents need to be supported by their parents in order to overcome their psychological and sexual issues.

adoptive parents: not real parents

Adoptive parents might go through grave emotional ups and downs and such challenging struggles may affect the upbringing of the children.

after-school childcare: forms of childcare to children whose school days do not coincide with the working hours of their parents or guardians

Many people enrol their child or children in an after-school club, not really knowing what to expect. Unlike specialised clubs, which offer tuition in music, dance or sport, these clubs exist mainly to provide a safe environment for primary school children whose parents work.

authoritarian: very strict

Evidence shows that authoritarian parenting can create lower levels of self-esteem and might result in poor social skills and difficult adjustment periods to new environments.

baby boomer: someone born during a period when a lot of babies were born, especially after the world war II

The government needs to create enough jobs for the baby boomers who soon become mature citizens.

babyhood: the period of time when you are a baby

Babyhood stage of human development seems to be the most fundamental period and has undeniable effects on their adulthood.

badly-off families: brought up in poor families

In many cases, gifted children who come from badly-off families cannot be discovered by the society.

biological/natural/birth/real parents: parents through birth

I firmly believe that children reared by their natural parents might be normal than those raised by adoptive ones.

birth rate: the number of birth

Regarding the effects of declining birth rate and increasing number of aged individuals, evidence suggests that both can gradually result in less younger labourers.

breadwinner: the person who earns money

In many underdeveloped countries, children are the only breadwinners of their families and do not have the chance to receive a proper education.

bring up: raise

It appear to be undeniable that a single mother finds it pretty challenging to bring up a child in financial hardship.

broken home: split up family

Evidence shows that youth delinquency is mostly rooted from broken families and harsh social situation.

broken marriage: a failed marriage

Unhealthy sexual relationship might have been an important reason for increasing number of broken marriages over the last few decades.

child-minder: someone who take care children unofficially

Childminders can't guarantee [back-up childcare](#) if they're ill or on holiday, or if they have an emergency, even if they're part of a local childminder network.

create conflict within the family: make problems in a family

Early marriage may sometimes create conflict within the family.

custody: somebody's guardianship

After the divorce, in many cases, people attempt to seek custody of their children.

delinquent child: a badly-behaved and troublesome child

Delinquent children are the products of parental behaviours and living standards.

dependent: needing someone or something to survive or be successful

Kids who are forced to recognize that there's a line in the sand all the time begin to be dependent on this line to define their own choices and behaviors in the future.

disobedient child: an unruly child

The possible sources of his inner turmoil and rebelliousness in disobedient children go possibly back to the family situation and the social environment.

divorce: legal end of a marriage

After a divorce, people feel extremely depressed and as a consequence make

their attempts to bring their lives to normal through remarriage, but psychologists say that immediate remarriage after a divorce might not be a reasonable solution to this.

domineering: authoritarian; high-handed

Domineering parents can deteriorate the social skills of their offsprings in large.

dysfunctional family: abnormal family

Some behavioural disorders might be the result of dysfunctional family relationships.

early marriage: premature and overhasty marriage

Poverty and destitute may be the consequences of early marriage based on recent research findings.

extended family: a family which extends beyond nuclear family and includes grandparents, etc.

Overall, sharing economic responsibilities and building stronger family bonds are two main advantages of an extended family.

family breakdown: divorce

The impacts of a family breakdown on children's well-being might undeniably lead to psychological issues such as depression and lack of self-confidence.

family commitments: family loyalty and obligations

Menial jobs wouldn't really fit in with highly educated people's family commitments.

family conflict: family problem

First and foremost, a serious family conflict, if not resolved in a logical way, can in part be a reason for less social skills and therefore less promising future prospects.

family life: life after marriage

First and foremost, you might be able to create a long-term balance between your work and family life through flexitime work or working from home.

family size: the number of family members

Abortion and childless marriage are two factors in contemporary human societies which have directly affected family size.

family tree: a diagram that depicts the relationships of the members of a family over a long period of time

Family trees can show our roots and the history behind every one of us.

family/parental expectations: expectations that families or parents have

for their children

In some cases, high parental expectations regarding school activities might result in playing truant and even committing minor crimes.

formative years: the years that build up somebody's character

I firmly believe that learning is not only the result of going to school, but it definitely goes back to formative years.

foster parent: a parent who foster children

Another pro of becoming a foster parent is monetary compensation. While the money should never be the reason that you become a foster parent, it does help out along the way. Some families would love to become foster parents, but they just do not have the resources. However, the compensation they receive can make it possible for them to open up their home to a child that needs foster care.

foster: take someone else's child to your family without being legally their parents

One of the biggest positive aspects of fostering children is that you have the ability to help others. You will be providing a home for children that have nowhere else to go, and in doing so you will be helping families and entire communities with your service.

foundling: an abandoned baby who cares for by others

The most prominent reason for parents to leave the foundlings in different places seems to be poverty.

fractious: irritable; bad-tempered

Parents should notice that a fractious child appears to be either hungry or sleepless.

genealogy: family tree or lineage

Genealogy is the study of [families](#) and the tracing of their [lineages](#) and history.

great deal of energy: a lot of energy

Actually, bringing up hyperactive children requires a great deal of energy and effort.

ground rules: the basic rules or principles on which future actions or behaviour should be based

Parents and older siblings establish the ground rules that the younger members of the family might not abide by in the future.

grounds for divorce: legal reasons for divorce

Dishonesty and financial difficulties might be the most important grounds for

divorce.

matriarchal: governed or controlled by women

Social mechanisms have produced matriarchal societies and kept them alive even until today.

mature: fully grown

Mature students need to be treated differently than the younger ones.

maturity: adulthood

When youngsters come to full maturity, they attempt to experience independence.

member of a family: a part of a family

A good family man is completely devoted to the members of his family.

mutual divorce: an agreed divorce

Mutual divorce is quite common among celebrities.

new-born baby: a recently born baby

Obviously, advice regarding possible diseases can be given to the people with new-born babies.

nuclear family: parents and their kids; immediate family

Feeling of loneliness is one of the most important drawbacks of a nuclear family.

nurture: upbringing

Well-behaved youngsters have definitely received a good nurture from their parents and teachers.

offspring: a child

The problems parents have with their teenage offspring are rooted from a sense of independence that the youngsters are going through.

old-established family: a family with a long history or background

The children who belonged to old-established families are not necessarily able to start up on a promising career and should in part depend on their own capabilities.

overprotective: support excessively

Overprotective parents may unconsciously confine the social abilities of their children.

patterns of behaviour: the way someone behaves

Some believe that parents of behaviour are directly inherited from parents.

parlay into: turn something smaller into something bigger and more important

Parents can parlay small encouragements and inspirations into a deep

motivation for their children to continue their educational career more successfully.

part of the family: a family member

Pets in modern lifestyle are a part of the family and the other members of the family are responsible for their health and nutrition.

patriarchal: governed or controlled by men

A patriarchal society may restrict women severely to open up and take important social responsibilities.

petition for divorce: file legally for divorce

The offsprings of the couples who have petitioned for divorce go through a hard time and this may affect their personality negatively.

precocious: gifted, talented

Precocious children need to go through a special education system in order to flourish.

progeny: a child

Numerous progeny may cause the parents have several problems regarding their upbringing.

prospective parents: parents who expect a child in the future

Most prospective parents make their best attempt to get financially prepared.

rear: raise; bring up

Well-rounded children are mostly brought up by educated parents.

remarry: marry again

He is waiting for the divorce to come through before he remarries.

role models: people that youngsters look up to and respect

For many children, the most important role models are their parents and caregivers. Children look up to a variety of role models to help shape how they behave in school, relationships, or when making difficult decisions. Children also look up to other relatives, teachers, coaches, and peers. Children may try to copy the behaviour and appearance of celebrities, such as athletes and entertainers, and characters from books, TV, movies, or video games.

siblings: sisters and brothers

Some say that siblings can help each other learn more things more easily as well as play together without bothering the parents so much.

single parent: a lone parent without a spouse

Being a single parent make the children's upbringing more challenging both mentally and psychologically. For example, a single mother finds it pretty

challenging to bring up a child in financial hardship.

street children: children who spend a lot of time on the streets

According to UN sources there are up to 150 million street children in the world today. Chased from home by violence, drug and alcohol abuse, the death of a parent, family breakdown, war, natural disaster or simply socio-economic collapse, many destitute children are forced to eke out a living on the streets, scavenging, begging, hawking in the slums and polluted cities of the developing world.

surrogate: a substitute

Older sisters sometimes act as a surrogate mother for their younger brothers.

the support of family: family's help

The support of family and friends can be extremely vital for a citizen to feel somehow confident.

youngster: a young person

Furthermore, those youngsters who speak and write in one or two other languages might be successful in case they decide to go abroad for study or work.

well-behaved child: a polite child

Well-behaved children probably have the necessary skills to establish better future prospects.

well-off families: brought up in rich families

Many students who come from well-off families are signed up in highly expensive schools.

well-to-do: rich; well-off

Well-funded schools belong discriminatingly to well-to-do families in most societies.

FOOD and DIET



a vegetarian diet: a diet without eating any meat or fish

In the first place, scientific evidence has shown that eating a vegetarian diet can lead to an immensely lower level of greenhouse gases.

a well-balanced diet: eating well and healthily

According to nutritionists, the first benefit of a well-balanced diet is weight control. Since a balanced diet requires eating a wide variety of wholesome foods, such a diet often makes maintaining a healthy body weight a bit easier. Secondly, a well-balanced diet is very important to the immune system, helping to ensure that the vitamins, minerals, and other nutrients necessary to its efficient function are available. Thirdly, keeping your body fuelled with the right proportions of vitamins, minerals and nutrients can give you the energy you need to make the most of your day.

additive: a substance that is added to food to improve its taste, appearance etc.

It is increasingly postulated that artificial food additives can increase the risk of allergy and cancer.

antioxidant: a substance in some foods that cleans the body and protects it from cancer

Scientists believe that antioxidants such as vegetables, fish oils and whole grains can improve our health and prevent diseases.

appetite: the desire for food

In addition, eating small and frequent meals such as snacks might help have a better appetite.

be high/low in calories: contain a lot of/few calories

Sweets and chocolates are high in calories and they seem hard to be burnt.

burn calories: use up the calories you have taken

Obviously, Daily workout will help you burn calories to a great extent.

calorie intake: the amount of calories someone eats

First and foremost, the most important way of alleviating your high calorie intake is to determine your caloric reduction. For example, if you avoid calorific drinks and having excessive fat, you can probably take your calorie intake under control.

canned food: food which is preserved in a round metal container; tinned
Many canned foods contained high levels of sodium. The salt helps preserve

the food, but can elevate blood pressure, cause you to retain water and increase calcium loss.

consume in moderation: avoid excessive amounts of calories or any particular food or nutrient in order to adopt a healthy diet

The first solution to tackle health issues might be food consumption in moderation.

contain calories: have calories

Taking foods which contain so many calories can deteriorate our health in case you do not exercise at least twice a week.

convenience food: food that is prepared already and is sold frozen or in cans

All things considered, convenience foods' preparation time is reduced to a great extent, they need no storing, buying or planning of ingredients and can hardly get any leftovers, nevertheless, it seems for the consumer to be harder to control fat, salt and sugar levels and the cost per serving might be higher than homemade.

count calories: control your weight by eating fewer calories

Evidence shows that women tend to count calories more than men.

crash diet: an intensive diet

Firstly, unscientific basis of crash diet has made many to mention that people who adopt such an intensive diet do it without following a rationale. They haphazardly cut their calorie intake down. As a result, the body is starved of the vital nutrients and you end up getting fatigued. Secondly, people are enticed to [follow crash diets](#) as they offer quick results, however, these are temporary and cannot be continued for long. Thirdly, crash diets can lead to a lack of balanced diet. Consequently, nutritional deficiencies are bound to set in. This would lower your immunity and make you susceptible to various illnesses. Finally, prolonged sustenance on crash dieting will make you lose muscle mass.

cuisine: the eating habits of a country or an area

Based on what some nutrition experts say, Mediterranean cuisine is one of the healthiest diets across the world and could be introduced to other areas on our planet to alter and improve their eating habits.

diabetic diet: eating habits for people who have diabetes

A healthy diabetic diet can help you prevent, control, and even reverse diabetes.

diet: eating healthily

In order to follow a healthy and balanced diet, it is better to avoid fast food and live on a diet of white meat as well as high nutrients such fruits and vegetables.

dietary supplements: supplements that contain less sugar and fat
Although supplements can contribute to improved muscular strength, endurance and overall physical performance and enable us derive our daily dose of vitamin and minerals, one potential drawback of vitamin and mineral supplements is the cost. Planning and preparing healthy, nutritious meals is usually less costly than purchasing a quality supplement. In addition, food supplements can cause adverse side effects. Consuming excessive amounts of vitamin A in supplement form, for example, may cause liver damage, reduced bone strength, headaches and birth defects. Moreover, taking supplements may increase the risk of mega dosing.

dietary: related to diet
It can be said that tooth decay, high blood pressure and high cholesterol are some the effects of unhealthy dietary habits.

dietetics: the science that is concerned with people's diet
The science of dietetics says that decreased appetite can be resolved by eating smaller meals and snacks more frequently. Furthermore, food experts believe that decreased appetite might be a result of depression and is likely to be alleviated after depression is treated.

dietician: food expert or consultant
Dieticians postulate that the overconsumption of genetically modified foods can, it goes without saying, increase the likelihood of cancer and stroke.

eat a balanced diet: eat healthily
The recent scientific evidence demonstrates that eating a balanced diet can curb the risk of cancer and heart attack to a great extent.

eating disorder: eat insufficient amount of food
It seems more difficult to deal with eating disorder in older people.

eat rainbow: eat healthily; eat the food which is healthy and pleasing to eye
Nutritionists believe that we need to eat the rainbow in order to live longer and healthier.

empty calories: foods which do not contain any calories
Diet drinks are full of empty calories and appear to be useful while you tend to lose weight.

emulsifier: a substance that is added, especially to food, to prevent liquids

and solids from separating

In like manner, additives such as emulsifiers can cause obesity and gut disease.

fast food: a quick meal which is prepared quickly

One of the problems associated with fast foods is that people who consume them are less likely to eat fruits, vegetables and milk, and consequently this change in eating habits can easily lead to obesity.

fat-free: containing no fat

Although fat-free diet may be good as a preventative measure against various diseases which can, in part, be attributed to high fat and cholesterol such as heart disease, stroke and gallbladder disease, it can cause vitamin and mineral deficiencies in some people.

fatty food: food containing a lot of fat

First of all, new scientific evidence depict that fatty foods might raise your susceptibility to heart disease. Secondly, eating fat-rich foods multiplies your risk for heart disease. Researchers, in addition, suggest that eating saturated fats on a regular basis may increase your risk for a variety of cancers, including prostate, colon and rectum cancers. Moreover, eating high-fat diet can lead to weight gain which may have its serious health ramifications.

filling: food that is filling makes your stomach feel full

Baked potatoes and bean soup are both very filling and can help your body suppress hunger.

flexitarian diet: a vegetarian diet which has also included light meat such as fish, etc.

Reducing meat consumption through a flexitarian diet can help the environment by reducing water usage, greenhouse gases and fuel dependence.

food poisoning: a stomach illness caused by eating food that contains harmful bacteria, so that you vomit

The main reasons for food poisoning are the foods such as meat which are not cooked thoroughly, those foods which have not been stored correctly and also eating foods that have been touched by someone who is ill. Self-contamination can be another cause of food poisoning.

fortified foods: make foods healthier by adding more nutrients such as vitamins to them

While fortified foods contain increased amounts of selected micronutrients and if consumed on a regular and frequent basis can maintain body stores of

nutrients more efficiently and more effectively than will intermittent supplements, they are, at the same time, not a substitute for a good quality diet that supplies adequate amounts of energy, protein, essential fats and other food constituents required for optimal health.

freeze-dried food: food that has been frozen and dried very quickly in order to preserve it

Overall, although the portability of freeze-dried foods seems to be easier and cheaper, they are quite expensive due to the specialized equipment needed for this process and take up almost as much space as fresh foods.

health food: organic food

The first advantage of health food is undeniably absence of all non-natural ingredients. In addition, due to the fact that health food products should not contain any artificial preservatives, their shelf life is much shorter. This is particularly important when it comes to fresh fruits and vegetables which start to lose nutritional value the same moment they are harvested. As a result, this type of food provides remarkably greater quantities of essential nutrients which play the key role in human health. Moreover, health food offers a number of indirect but just as important positive effects on both human health and the environment.

healthy diet: eating healthily; having good eating habits

There is a consensus among the nutritionists that healthy diet can definitely curb problems related to aches and pains in the bone and boost the immunity system of human body against dangerous diseases.

high-calorie: containing many calories

High-calorie foods usually contain much fat and can result in obesity.

home-cooked food: the food which is cooked at home

Scientists claim that home-cooked foods seem to be hygienically safer than takeaways which are usually more contaminated due to reasons such as the way they are handled and transferred to the customers.

hygiene: the practice of keeping yourself and the things around you clean in order to prevent diseases; sanitation

Perhaps, the way forward is to set up food hygiene training courses in different universities in order to raise awareness about the risks of unhygienic eating habits.

junk food: food with low nutritional value

Junk foods are high-energy-dense because they contain a lot of calories, mostly from fat and sugar, but offer few nutritional benefits. This is why

people who eat a lot of junk food such as pizzas might gain weight and become obese.

low-calorie: containing few calories; lo-cal

Some claim that being on a low-calorie diet does not necessarily mean that you are losing weight.

low-fat: containing a small quantity of fat

Conversely, low-fat diets, although useful for short-term weight loss, may not be healthy or successful in the long-term.

macrobiotic diet: a [plant-based diet](#) which consists of grains and vegetables

It should be said that many nutritionists suggest a healthy macrobiotic diet in order to prevent or overcome health problems such as blood pressure and inflammation. Additionally, macrobiotic eating is believed to best support agriculture, local farming, digestion and even mental well-being.

malnourishment: malnutrition; bad eating habits

Turning to the possible solutions, it can, firstly, be said that malnourishment might be alleviated by encouraging people to choose healthier and nutritive foods to eat. In addition, nutritionists believe that snacking on healthy foods is a good way of getting extra nutrients and calories between meals. Furthermore, malnutrition might be solved by making food taste good again in line with adding nutritious supplements to one's diet. Finally, it seems quite reasonable that encouraging malnourished people to do exercise and planning social activities for them on a daily basis may aid to resolve such a grave issue.

masticate: chew food

Food mastication can help you stop feeling bloated as well as absorbing more nutrients and energy from your food.

mealtime: a time during the day when you have a meal

Many scientists believe that changing mealtimes might help the citizens have healthier eating habits.

metabolism: the chemical processes by which food is changed into energy in your body

To recap, the ways in which we can boost our metabolism include eating plenty of healthy nourishing fats, avoiding sugar and flour, doing exercise and getting great night sleep.

nourishment: foods and nutrients we need to live

It seems that we cannot obtain much nourishment from fast food.

nutrition: food considered as something that is necessary for good health and growth

On balance, there is a scientific consensus that poor nutrition can result in obesity putting people at risk for developing a host of life-threatening disorders, hypertension, which means high blood pressure as a result of eating junk food, fried food and dairy products, and diseases such as diabetes, stroke and cancer.

organic food: healthy food

Obviously, organic foods are most of the time fresher and healthier because they do not contain additives and preservatives in order to make it last longer. In addition, organic farming seems environmental-friendly as well.

overeate: eat too much

Although, psychologically speaking, overeating can lead to depression and self-hatred, obesity and constant bloating might be mentioned as its two physical symptoms.

overindulge: eat or drink too much

To recap, it can be said that overindulgence may have physical as well as mental impacts on human beings varying from digestion issues to stress and anxiety.

polyunsaturated: polyunsaturated fats or oils come from vegetables and plants, and are considered to be better for your health than animal fats

It is scientifically proved that the entire elimination of saturated fat in your diet does not appear to be reasonable, however, replacing saturated fats with polyunsaturated fats in the diet has been shown to lower blood cholesterol, one of the risk factors in the development of heart disease.

poor diet: eating unhealthily; having bad eating habits

Poor diet in many underdeveloped countries has been detrimental to children's mental development and has caused pressing dental and digestive problems on a large scale.

preservative: a chemical substance that is used to prevent things from decaying

Turning to the possible disadvantages of artificial preservatives, it can be said that preserved foods are not fresh. Additionally, the chemicals used to preserve the foods can cause diseases such as asthma or diabetes in some people. Common preservatives add a lot of sugar or salt to foods which can cause other health issues. Finally, preservatives and additives can also make food lose some of its nutritional value.

processed food: food with preservatives

Notwithstanding, foods are usually processed to kill harmful bacteria or other microorganism, to make them safer and for longer shelf life, are easy to get in all seasons and at all stores and seem to be quality convenience foods for busy people and for those who can't visit a faraway market to buy vegetables and meat, they appear, at the same time, to be obtained from laboratories and not nature, are genetically modified and may cause gastrointestinal disorders, infertility and can damage your organs, and frequent intake of them can make people become angry and irritable and suffer from inflammation and aging issues.

ravenous: very hungry; starving

In order to curb our ravenous appetite it is suggested by nutritionists to drink more water, since plenty of people confuse hunger with dehydration. Another way of having control over our hunger is to power up with breakfast, eat more regularly and take teatime.

red meat: dark coloured meat such as beef or lamb

Eating red meat shortens our span of life due to reasons such as hardening the blood vessels and diabetes.

reheat: make a meal or drink hot again

Reheating precooked food can be bad when done multiple times as the food loses its nutrient value as well as some taste.

sell-by date: a date on a product showing the last day by which it should be sold

Evidence shows that common signs of health effects in case a product is sold past its sell-by date include cramping in the stomach area, frequent vomiting, fever, dizziness, dehydration and persistent diarrhea.

somebody's daily calories: the calories somebody takes every day

A large number of people take their daily calories from snacks and sweets.

sustenance: food as a means of living

Human beings need sustenance in order to survive.

takeaway: the food you buy to eat at home; takeout

Overall, although ordering food for a family meal from a restaurant can be very convenient, takeaways appear to be expensive and there seems to be little control over the quality of the ingredient used while cooking the food and the method of cooking at a restaurant may not be suitable for everyone, especially those with dietary restriction specified by their doctor.

vacuum-packed food: the food that is in a container from which most of

the air has been removed, so that the food will stay fresh for longer
Although vacuum-packed food is compact and lightweight and is prepared fast, its bag are usually expensive as well as fragile while being transported.

vegan diet: the eating habit of a nonmeat-eater

A strict vegan diet might lower the risk of cancer in long-run.

vegetarian lifestyle/diet: the life of someone who does not eat meat

To conclude, it appears to be obvious that vegetarian diet may reduce the incidence of diabetes and might diminish the risk of cardiovascular disease and obesity.

vegetarianism: the practice of not eating meat or fish

The supporters of vegetarianism believe that cutting out meat from your diet can, in the first place, help you pinch pennies when money is tight. Additionally, vegetarian lifestyle seems to be one of the most effective ways to lower body mass, which means meatless diets lower your risk for obesity. Furthermore, according to many dietitians, cutting meat from your diet may also lower your risk for heart disease.

voracious: eating too much food; insatiable; gluttonous

In my view, voracious appetite is the important reason for gaining weight.

white meat: chicken or poultry meat; light meat

Eating white meat like poultry is claimed to be healthy because it, for instance, can be counted as an important factor towards weight control.

wholefood: unprocessed food which does not contain additives and preservatives

A whole food diet involves maximizing your nutrient intake from natural sources and avoiding nutrient-poor processed foods.

GLOBAL CHALLENGES and ENVIRONMENT



acid rain: rain which is polluted with acid and can be severely detrimental to the environment

Acidic air pollutants in many cases result in acid rain which could mostly harm the aquatic environments and have impact on lakes, water streams and wetlands.

aerosol sprays: a small metal container with liquid inside. You press a button on the container to make the liquid come out in very small drops
Recent research results show that aerosol sprays can have impact on the level of precipitation, can increase pets' cancer risk and emit volatile organic compound.

air/water/environmental pollutant: something that contaminates the air, water and environment

The environmentalists and human activists have pushed the parliament to enforce new laws towards reducing the environmental pollutants which puts our lives and different species in great danger.

alien species: animal and plant which do not belong to a habitat
Recent scientific findings show that any effort to introduce alien species to a new natural habitat can threaten the lives of the original species living there sometimes for thousands of years.

alleviate poverty: make poverty less severe
Critics claimed that economic success had done little to alleviate fundamental problems of poverty and the grossly unequal distribution of income.

amphibian: an animal species that is able to live on land and in water
African frogs are amphibians that breed in small puddles temporarily filled with heavy seasonal rainfalls.

an outbreak of a disease: when an illness begins to appear on a wide scale
The increasing consumption of genetically modified foods is concurrent with the outbreak of new sorts of diseases.

biodegradable substances: substances which are harmful to the environment

Fumes produced by heavy industries contain biodegradable substances.

biofuel: fuel made from flora and fauna
For the most part, although biofuels can lower the levels of pollution, reduce

greenhouse gases and be rather cost-effective, they might be as well a cause of industrial pollution.

biohazard: a biological element which can harm animals and people
Biohazards seem to be irresistible, although scientists have done significant research to partly tackle its pernicious effects.

biohazard: dangerous to human's health or the environment
Microbiological and pathological waste are good examples of biohazard.

biomass: flora and fauna used to create energy and power
Reportedly, power from burning biomass is more common in underdeveloped countries.

biosecurity measures: methods to prevent diseases
Biosecurity measures should be taken to reduce the risk of transmission of [infectious diseases](#) in crops and livestock.

biosecurity: protection against the outbreak and spread of human and animal diseases

We need to adopt strict biosecurity measures to prevent the danger of the outbreak of fatal diseases.

brain drain: immigration of educated and talented people to another country

All in all, it seems acceptable that youth unemployment may be a really problematic issue to deal with, however, there are more serious ramifications such as brain drain and other serious risks which appear to be insurmountable to a great extent both for the governments and their people.

breed in captivity: keeping animals in controlled environments within well-defined settings

Animals which are in danger of extinction can be bred in captivity in places such as wildlife reserves and zoos.

bring stability: cause steadiness
The nuclear negotiations have partly brought stability to the Middle East.

carnivore: a meat-eater
The carnivores feed on mammals and fish and have pivotal role in natural life cycle.

carnivorous: of a meat-eater
Some reptiles such as crocodiles are carnivorous species that play an important role in ecosystem.

CFC gases: Chlorofluorocarbons
Scientific evidence has proved that CFC gases have destroyed the earth's

protective ozone layer, which shields the earth from harmful ultraviolet rays generated from the sun.

child labour: the exploitative employment of children in an industry or business in an illegal way

For instance, child labour is quite common in most African countries and can keep children deprived of their basic rights to education, development, and freedom.

class polarisation: divide social classes into separate groups

The existing gap between the rich and poor is coming from the class polarisation which took place in the post-revolution struggles.

climate change: dramatic change or shift in global weather conditions

It is vital to reduce the emissions from increasing livestock farming and burning coal, oil and gas that cause climate change as soon as possible.

conservation: keeping natural organisms healthy; preservation

While acid rains are increasing day by day because of soaring air pollutants, we need to invest on cost-effective ways of the aquatic life conservation.

conservationist: someone who tries to preserve and protect nature

Many of the recent findings about how to preserve natural resources have been the upshots of the nonstop trials and errors of diligent conservationists and environmentalists over the past decades.

contaminant: pollutant

Air contaminants such as carbon dioxide have incredibly precipitated sudden and heavy acid rains which not only are harmful to sea living creatures, but also they might harm human lives in megacities and urban areas.

contaminate: make dirty; pollute

Oil leakage in different seas and oceans has contaminated the aquatic environments killing millions of fish and putting the life of sea species in danger.

contamination: pollution

Air contamination appears to be one of the increasingly grave issues of modern life.

cost-cutting exercise: attempt to reduce the expenses

Even well-off families have to be more conservative and do a cost-cutting exercise during the period of financial crisis.

counterbalance: act opposite to make a balance

Perhaps energy deficit can be counterbalanced by using windmill to produce

greener energy.

create instability: cause the possibility of sudden changes

High levels of unemployment and inflation can create social and economic instability which may cause unpredictable social unrest.

death of the forests: demolition of the trees in a large scale; forest dieback

According to scientists, global climate change and acid rain seem to be the paramount reasons for the death of the forests.

death toll: the number of dead people in a disaster

Since the traditional medication was unable to cure the deadly diseases, the death toll had been rising continuously.

deforestation: the act of removing trees from an area; logging

The deforestation of rainforests for farming purposes has destroyed the natural habitats and harmed the life cycle in those areas.

demographics: statistics and data about the dwellers of a region or area

The demographics of different countries depicts that the levels of intercontinental immigration have grown rapidly and dramatically over the last decade due to reasons such as war, drought and famine.

deplete: reduce or diminish the amount of something

The ozone layer has been depleted because of the chemicals and pollutants produced by human activities.

depletion: reduction or decrease in the amount of something

The depletion of the ozone layer seems to be unsurmountable, unless ozone layer-friendly campaigns are set up and supported by the people and governmental authorities.

desertification: the process in which a fertile land changes into desert or an arid or parched land

Desertification, as a sort of land degradation, is caused by climate change and deforestation.

destitute: homeless and absolutely poor; impecunious; penniless

War and political conflicts in the Middle East has left millions of people destitute.

detergent: a liquid or powder used in a washing machine

Scientists say that overusing detergents may endanger our health and have environmental effects.

devastating effects/results/consequences/impacts: extremely bad effects/results...

Increase in the temperature of the Earth can have a devastating impact on

the great melt happening every year in Arctic and Antarctic.

die of hunger/starvation: die because of food shortages

Many people die of starvation, these days, rooted from wars and pernicious diseases.

dire consequences: extremely serious results

The great ice melt, rising sea levels and the loss of biodiversity are some of the dire consequences of climate change.

disadvantaged backgrounds: poor or badly-off families and situations

If insurance programmes are not utilised to lessen problems such as disadvantaged backgrounds, poverty will increasingly penetrate the fabric of the society and the gap between the rich and poor will certainly be widened.

do irreparable damage: harm in an irreversible way

Our fossil fuel emissions have done irreparable damage to the planet, and have led to the rising sea levels and increasingly frequent natural disasters such as earthquakes, hurricanes, and tornados.

domesticate: keep an animal as a pet

Mammals were first domesticated by human beings for their milk.

doomsday scenario: an extremely dangerous situation possible in the future

Works of art produced in the second half of twentieth century are full of doomsday scenarios.

drain on energy and resources: use energy and resources nonstop for a long time

The world wars were enormous drains on the world's resources.

dumping ground: a place to get rid of garbage

Based on scientific evidence dumping grounds have already deteriorated the quality of soil and have decreased the abundance of vegetation across the world.

eco-friendly: something which does not harm the ecosystem and the environment

It is undeniable that eco-friendly products can aid to decrease the soaring level of environmental damage.

ecology: a scientific branch associated with how living creatures are connected to each other as well as to their environment

Ecological evidence shows that pollution has negatively affected the environment.

e-commerce: commerce via the Internet

E-commerce has revolutionised the whole traditional economic system over the last few decades. One of its advantages is that the customers have the possibility to compare the prices much more easily, although there is an inability to experience the product before purchase.

economic instability: economic insecurity

Over the last few years, a series of political oppositions and scandals have resulted in a serious long-term instability in some parts of Europe including Greece and Spain.

eco-sensitive land/area: a land or area which, naturally or historically speaking is paramount and should be preserved

Wars and drought have seriously put many eco-sensitive areas in danger.

eco-tourism: the industry that takes tourists to see the remote natural environments

Eco-tourism can have positive effects preservation of surrounding environment on green movements.

effluent: water waste or sewage

Persian Gulf has been severely contaminated with effluents from different factories near the seaside.

emigration: leave your country to live in another country

Regarding the positive effects of emigration, it can, firstly, be said that the developing countries might benefit from remittances or payments sent home by migrants that now often outstrip foreign aid. Secondly, the level of unemployment is reduced and young migrants enhance their life prospects. Thirdly, it is obvious that returning migrants bring savings, skills and international contacts to their home lands which may end in more progression.

endangered species: rare species which may become extinct soon

Perhaps what has increased the number of endangered species such as Russian tiger is the widespread destruction of their habitat by hunters and tourists.

environmental/economic catastrophe: harsh or extremely bad environmental/economic conditions

Some governments have introduced new legislations which will imminently result in increasing levels of fossil fuels used for industrial purposes and greenhouse gases, which might in turn lead to an environmental catastrophe in near future.

environmentalist: someone who is concerned about protecting the

environment

Environmentalists share a mission to protect the environment. They interact with nature as their teacher.

environmentally-friendly: something which does not harm the environment

Environmentally-friendly industrial projects can lead to a healthier biosphere.

environmentally-sensitive land/area: eco-sensitive land

Some lakes in Iran have been designated as environmentally-sensitive areas by the international green organisations.

environment-friendly: something which does not harm the environment

One of the best ways to address the problem of ozone layer depletion is to introduce environment-friendly factories and greenhouses.

equilibrium of ecosystem: the balance of ecosystem

Many countries are struggling to recover the lost equilibrium of ecosystem.

eradicate: put an end to or stop a severe problem or disease

Some rare diseases could possibly be eradicated by modern medication.

erosion: the process of eroding or being eroded by wind, water, or other natural agents

The governments should launch an international campaign in order to tackle the problem of soil erosion.

extinction: when an animal or plant disappear or die out

The imminent extinction of dinosaurs, as a group of scientists believe, was because of the huge meteor's collision with the Earth.

extreme poverty: severe poverty; absolute poverty or penury

Unbalanced distribution of wealth has led many nations towards extreme poverty.

face a major/serious threat: be affected by a severely bad situation

Humans might face a major threat because of increasing number of countries which are willing to have nuclear weapons.

factory farming: a system of rearing livestock using highly intensive methods, by which poultry, pigs, or cattle are confined indoors under strictly controlled conditions

One of the advantages of factory farming is that it can lower the business cost as well as increase the food production level.

famine: when many people starve to death

Great world wars have always been followed by fatal famines.

flora and fauna: plants and animals

Tourism is uncontrollably damaging the flora and fauna of many unspoilt islands.

food chain: all animals and plants considered as a group in which a plant is eaten by an insect or animal, which is then eaten by another animal and so on

Evidence demonstrates that climate change has dramatically affected many creatures lower down the food chain.

food shortages/scarcity: not enough food

Food shortages might result in malnutrition and, as a consequence, different incurable diseases.

fossil fuel: a fuel formed from ancient decayed flora or fauna

Green revolutionists make their best attempt to replace fossil fuels by a less harmful source of energy.

fumes: harmful smokes

Fumes produced by various sources such as factories or even smokers can deteriorate our natural habitat and decrease the levels of longevity.

gas-guzzling four-by-fours: four-wheel-drive motor vehicles which consume a lot of fuel

The rising incidence of driving gas-guzzling four-by-fours requires drastic countermeasures to be taken by the government.

genetic engineering: the scientific branch which makes changes in organisms' genetic structure

Genetic engineering involves in gene and chromosome which are probably severely susceptible.

genetically modified (GM) food: food made by making changes to the genetic structure of their ingredients

Genetically modified food can have long-term effects on humans and might be detrimental to the natural environment.

global village: we use this to refer to how interconnected and correlated are things in our contemporary world which is a result of globalization

In our global village, any message can be sent to any part of our planet in some seconds and important events such as seminars and performances have the possibility of being watched from even the back of beyond.

global warming: a gradual and general increase in the temperature of the Earth caused by greenhouse gas

Greenhouse effect is claimed to be the main reason for global warming.

globalisation: a global unification of nations regarding their culture, commerce or politics

The process of globalisation started to be controversial as a philosophical matter around a century ago and now we can see clearly the upshots of this universal phenomenon to a great extent.

great deal of: a huge or massive amount of
Nowadays, a great deal of money and effort is needed to lower the surging sea levels resulting from human industrial activities, climate change and uncontrollable melt of ice caps.

green energy: environmentally friendly energy
Green energy is a practical, affordable solution to our electricity needs. By ramping up renewable energy, we can reduce air pollution, cut global warming emissions and decrease dependence on coal and other fossil fuels.

green revolution: the movement towards protecting the environment and nature to remain or become healthy

The fading hopes are reappearing with the advent of several green movements in different continents.

green: related to the environment protection
Compared to few decades ago, more people are becoming concerned about green issues.

greener options: more eco-friendly options
Turning to the possible remedies, citizens can replace disposable products with reusable ones in order to produce less trash. Additionally, city inhabitants can buy used products such as books, magazines and newspapers whenever possible and share them with friends and neighbours. Another greener option is to buy only what you need, how much you think you are going to consume and commodities with least amount of packaging. This might consequently help create less trash knowing that every little waste does make a difference.

greenhouse effect: the trapping of the sun's warmth in a planet's lower atmosphere, due to the greater transparency of the atmosphere to visible radiation from the sun than to infrared radiation emitted from the planet's surface

The man-made component of the greenhouse effect is caused by man's activities that emit greenhouse gases to the atmosphere. The most important of these is the burning of fossil fuels.

greenhouse gas: the gas produced by a greenhouse which can increase the

temperature of the Earth and cause many problems

Greenhouse gases emissions have caused the temperature of our planet rise dramatically, and consequently, the ice caps have started melting nonstop.

gridlock: stuck in a heavy traffic jam

Sometimes a car accident can cause gridlock in a big area and make serious problems for work commuters.

groundwater depletion: decrease in underground water resources

Countries which contribute to groundwater depletion might end up with a range of ramifications. First and foremost, decrease in underground water resources can lead to increased costs for the users. As the depth to water increases, the water must be lifted higher to reach the land surface, thereby increasing cost. Moreover, it may also result in reduction of water in streams and lakes knowing that some, and often a great deal, of the water flowing in rivers comes from seepage of groundwater into the streambed. Furthermore, it can deteriorate the water quality having impact on the quality of the overall water supply itself.

groundwater replenishment: recharge underground water resources

Turning to the possible solutions to groundwater depletion, it can be mentioned that rainwater harvesting is an efficient method to replenish groundwater, however, this method can be used only during the rains in urban and rural areas. In addition, raingardens can be designed to hold rainwater runoff from rooftops, driveways, patios, or lawns and to recharge groundwater afterwards, which could have other advantages such as improvement of water quality by filtering pollutants and preservation of native vegetation. Use of injection wells is also a more energy-intensive method of groundwater replenishment, utilizing high-pressure pumps to actively push water into aquifers.

habitat loss: destruction of the natural home of an animal

Habitat loss, due to destruction, fragmentation or degradation of habitat, is the primary threat to the survival of wildlife in the United States.

heavy industry: industry in which heavy and big products are manufactured

A major proportion of carbon dioxide emissions which has endangered plant and animal species has been produced by heavy industries in recent years.

herbivore: plant-eater

You can understand which animal is a herbivore by looking at their teeth.

herbivorous: of a plant-eater

Herbivorous animals' stomach has the capability of digesting almost every sort of plants.

high-technology (high-tech): advanced technology used in industry, commerce, etc.

Australasian countries have built a booming and thriving economy based on the production or import of high-tech.

human consumption: suitable for humans to consume
Many think that fast foods are unfit for human consumption because they can result definitely in obesity and serious sicknesses such as diabetes.

human habitation: suitable for humans to live in
Natural habitat of many animals has been destroyed as a result of human habitation, industrialisation, urbanisation and agriculture.

human trafficking: illegal transfer of people for illegal purposes such as sex exploitation and child labour
Reportedly, many less well-off family members in underdeveloped countries are the victims of international human trafficking.

illiteracy: inability to read and write
Illiteracy appears to be a much-discussed problem which is sometimes considered as an ever-present danger in many underdeveloped countries.

imbalance: a lack of balance; inequality
The current imbalance between farming and conservation interests may gradually end up with new irreparable detriments to biosphere.

immigration: enter a country to permanently live there
First and foremost, immigration as an international phenomenon can help fill job vacancies and skills gaps. Hence, economic growth can possibly be sustained. Furthermore, services to an ageing population can be maintained through a large number of young immigrants entering a country when there are insufficient young people locally. Finally, it should be said that the pension gap can partly be filled by the contributions of new young workers who come from abroad and pay taxes.

impoverished: extremely poor
The government should feel responsible for the education and employment of the impoverished young refugees.

income disparity: difference in how much money people earn
Perhaps the existing social gap between the poor and the rich can be partly resolved if the government makes attempts to alleviate the issue of income disparity through a more effectual distribution of wealth.

infringe the regulations: act against a law; break a rule; flout a rule

Many new immigrants infringe the traffic regulations in their new homeland due to reasons such as unfamiliarity with the rules and regulations or being unable to comply with the law enforced in the host country.

inhabitable: can be lived in

Firstly, our planet is inhabitable because of its right distance from the Sun and also an insulating atmosphere which protect it from the harmful solar radiation. Secondly, sustainable water resources are the paramount causes of a nonstop life cycle in which many different animal and plant species live.

insectivore: an insect-eater

Many lizards, frogs, and spiders are classified as insectivores.

insulation: stopping heat and sound from getting in and out

In the final analysis, notwithstanding its high cost due to the usage of high technology, it is a fact that sound insulation can alleviate the disturbing sound, especially in overcrowded areas.

interplanetary travel: travel to other planets

Nanotechnology has helped scientists have a better understanding of the outer space and may result in interplanetary travel in the future.

introduce green taxes: levy taxes on fuel to lessen the harm to the natural environment

One way of preserving the natural environment is to introduce green taxes on the factories using fossil fuels.

invest in clean energy: put money into the energy sources that do not pollute the environment

The way for the governments and multinational organisations is to invest more and more in clean energy to decrease the total levels of oil and gas exploitation.

irreparable: something which cannot be fixed or repaired

Uncontrolled oil exploitation may end up with irreparable environmental damages.

irreversible: something which cannot be reversed or addressed

Greenhouse gases have done irreversible damages to our planet and its inhabitants.

islandisation: habitat destruction or fragmentation because of farming, logging, etc.

One of the paramount issues rooted from illegal cutting of trees and changing forests into farms is islandisation.

kerosene: paraffin

Regarding the benefits of kerosene, it can primarily be said that it seems to be a relatively low-cost fuel and kerosene heaters appear to be a very efficient heat source, producing more heat per gallon than propane, wood and coal. Furthermore, they may be used to heat one room of a building without increasing the heat to all other rooms. As a result, this might allow homeowners to reduce overall heating costs while conserving energy.

life-threatening diseases: fatal diseases

Thanks to the modern medication, many life-threatening diseases which could endanger the lives of many people a few centuries ago now have been meticulously kept under the control of scientists.

light industry: industry in which light and small products are manufactured

Light industry has a pivotal role in producing jobs for young job seekers and addressing the high levels of unemployment.

live below the poverty/bread line: have an income that is less than what you need to have the least welfare and safety

Surveys have shown that a fifth of the region's population live below the poverty line and experience grave financial problems.

logging: illegal cutting or chopping down trees

Illegal logging is becoming a global problem. Already endangered species of flora and fauna are being pushed closer to extinction due to widespread habitat destruction and [fragmentation](#). Moreover, illegal logging plays a huge role in climate change and [greenhouse gas emissions](#). Forests regulate local climates and are a significant [carbon sink](#), reducing atmospheric carbon dioxide levels. Furthermore, chopping down trees can destroy the lives of local communities and native populations. Not only does illegal logging have massive environmental ramifications, it can also be economically crippling for poorer countries.

longevity: length of life; life span

The more industrialised becomes a society, the less will be the longevity of its inhabitants.

low-technology (low-tech): using little advanced or computerised technology

Nowadays, low-tech can exacerbate the situation for a society which is making its best attempts to open up both economically and politically.

maintain our present lifestyle: preserve the healthy way we live now

Skyrocketing rates of obesity need to be counterbalanced by vegetarianism in order to maintain our present healthy lifestyle.

make up the shortfall: make up for the lack of something

Human beings should possibly face stark choices in order to make up the shortfall of biofuel.

malnutrition: poor, inadequate or unhealthy diet and nourishment

Finally, it must be said that the price of maintaining a pet, for example a dog, may be prohibitively high for less better-off families. Therefore the pet may suffer malnutrition.

marine pollution: sea water contamination

A significant percentage of marine pollution comes from industrial chemicals and residential waste.

melting pot: a living centre for various people from different nations

One of the problems associated with melting pots such as London is that there might not be a mutual understanding between their native inhabitants and the immigrant regarding social norms, ideologies and religious beliefs.

migration: go in large numbers to live or work in another country

Regarding the drawbacks of migration, it can primarily be said that the depression of wages may occur, although this seems to be temporary. As a result, having workers willing to work for relatively low pay may allow employers to ignore productivity, training and innovation. Additionally, migrants may be exploited whereas increases in population can put pressure on public services. Furthermore, the level of unemployment may rise if there are unrestricted numbers of incomers. There may also be integration difficulties and friction with local people. Finally, it seems undeniable that the large movements of people lead to more security monitoring and such an ease of movement may facilitate organised crime and people trafficking.

nationalisation: the process through which an industry is owned or controlled by the government

In some countries, nationalisation of heavy industries has led to a worse economic situation and there is a need to make them more painstakingly privatised.

nature-friendly: something which does not harm the nature

Over the past decades, the governments have persisted on creating more nature-friendly technology in order to ameliorate the deteriorating living conditions.

noise pollution: high-pitched and piercing sounds which make a place

difficult to live

First and foremost, one of the possible solutions to noise pollution is adequate sound insulation.

non-motorised transportation: travelling without having an engine

Non-motorised transportation such as cycling and walking can have a dominant role in alleviating the thorny issue of climate change. Thus, in order to develop an appropriate non-motorised transportation system, the way forward for the government is to improve sidewalks, crosswalks, paths, bicycle lanes and networks, develop pedestrian oriented land use and building design and increase road and path connectivity, with special non-motorised shortcuts. These might lead to traffic calming, streetscape improvements, traffic speed reductions and consequently road space reallocation.

ocean dumping: throwing waste into ocean

In the first place, ocean dumping such as oil spills is hazardous to aquatic environment due to lack of oxygen and can have bad effects on coral reefs that thrive in the ocean. Moreover, dumping bottles and plastics into oceans might suffocate sea creature and poison humans who eat them as food.

offset carbon emissions/footprint: decrease, neutralise or counterbalance the amount carbon dioxide

Turning to the possible solutions, it seems vital to cut the quantity of meat and dairy we spend per month as well as using more organic food in order to help offset our carbon emissions in part.

offshore wind farms: construction of wind farms inside water bodies to produce electricity

An offshore wind farm has the potential to produce up to twice as much power as onshore wind farm and that is why it is considered a more cost effective way of generating electricity.

omnivore: an animal which is both meat-eater and plant-eater

Bears are omnivores and eat both fish and plants.

omnivorous: of an omnivore

Badgers are omnivorous animals and their stomach is able to digest meat and plant.

organic: produced or involving production without the use of chemical fertilizers, pesticides, or other artificial chemicals

The second disadvantage of organic food is its higher price.

over-crowdedness: when there are too many people in an area or a place

Noise pollution can be an upshot of urban over-crowdedness.

overexploitation: overuse or overutilisation of natural resources

Overhunting and overfishing are good examples of overexploitation which may lead to destruction of animal and fish populations.

overfishing: fishing excessively

Overfishing, if not banned urgently, may threaten the aquatic life.

overgrazing: grazing so much that it results in the degradation of vegetation and also erosion

If new laws are not brought in against overgrazing and overharvesting, the process of climate change will unstopably be enhanced and the whole planet will undergo a massive natural disaster.

overharvesting: harvesting a renewable resource to the point of diminishing returns

Overharvesting has harmed biodiversity by destroying ecosystems and eliminating flora and fauna.

over-industrialization: make industrialised excessively

To sum up, over-industrialisation of human lifestyle and civilisation has been a cause of increase in obesity and stress levels over the past ten years.

overpopulation: populated with excessive number of people

In addition to malnutrition and over-consumption of natural resources like fossil fuels, overpopulation can cause a deterioration of living conditions ending up with devastating pandemics.

ozone layer depletion: decline in the amount of ozone

Scientific research findings have recently substantiated that the main cause of ozone layer depletion is human industrial activity, especially, man-made chemicals.

ozone-friendly: substances and activities which do not contaminate the air and does not harm ozone layer

The ozone-friendly seminars in different countries have aided us to gain more knowledge about the industries and activities which can be harmful to the entire biosphere and ultimately the ozone layer.

particulates: particles in the air which can create air pollution

Higher level of particulates such as carbon dioxide would contribute to deplete the ozone layer and could possibly endanger flora and fauna across the world.

permeate: spread throughout; pervade

The smell of smoke coming from smokestacks has permeated the industrial

areas making them sometimes uninhabitable.

petrochemical: any chemical substance obtained from petroleum or natural gas

Petrochemical industry has been facing a severe crisis since the invention of renewable energy which is going to be the dominant resource of fuel in different countries.

petroleum: oil

Regarding the drawbacks of petroleum, firstly, there is a consensus among scientists that it is a limited resource like any other natural fossil fuel. Secondly, petroleum contributes to environmental pollution through generating greenhouse gases and, consequently, global warming. Thirdly, extracted oil is a non-renewable form of energy and the production of petroleum, especially refining, produces harmful and toxic materials, including plastic.

pneumatic: working with air power

The key benefit associated with air-powered tools is ease of use and it can help make most jobs easier to complete in less time. This is helpful in large jobs like installing a roof where speed and power lead to greater efficiency.

poaching: illegally catch or shoot animals, birds, or fish, especially on private land without permission

Poaching might put many animal species in danger of extinction.

pollution-free fuel: fuel which does not pollute the natural resources

It is the undeniable duty of the government and the human activists to encourage the owners of the industries to use pollution-free fuels.

poor sanitation: low quality of public health

Furthermore, the city amenities have normally been designed to cover a limited amount of human needs, however, the deluge of people coming from the countryside to live in the inner-city might get insufficient facilities such as public transport and sanitation.

popularisation of cars: make people like cars

Popularisation of gas-guzzling cars in the recent decades has been one of the main reasons of air pollution.

population explosion: a rapid and uncontrollable increase in population

Lack of birth control facilities such as contraceptives can lead to population explosion in poor countries.

poverty: when people suffer from being poor

Over all, although creating more jobs means alleviating poverty in part, the

church and charity organisations, should, in my view, help the poor have a better life and receiving a better education.

power outage: power cut

The main causes of power outage are trees, limbs or branches knocked down by wind, snow or ice into power lines. Additionally, lightning can also cause power cut if striking a transformer or other electrical facilities. Evidence, moreover, shows that car accidents and animals that contact the lines can create temporary or long-term loss of electric power. Furthermore, circuit overloads within the houses or equipment overloads because of air conditioning overuse by many citizens on hot days of summer may lead to serious power failure in electricity networks.

preventable diseases: diseases which could be kept from happening

Vaccination is one of the most efficient ways of dealing with preventable diseases.

pristine environment: very clean environment

Many animal and plant species need to live in a pristine environment in order to survive.

privatisation: bring parts of an economy under the control of private sector

The prerequisite for the privatisation of an economy is democratic management and a smaller government.

proportion of someone's income: a part of someone's earnings

Nowadays, many citizens cannot afford to spend a high proportion of their income on energy.

protect/preserve/safeguard/conserve the environment: keep the environment safe

Every country needs to take drastic steps to safeguard the natural environment against their industrial activities.

protected species: rare animals which are preserved not to become extinct

Some sorts of monkeys and frogs are registered as the protected species.

radioactive waste: nuclear waste

Radioactive waste is one of the causes of water contamination.

recyclable: things that could be recycled

Landfills are full of consumers' recyclables like glass or plastic bottles.

red tape: unnecessary paperwork in governmental offices; bureaucracy

The parliament should bring in new laws to cut off the red tape decelerating the whole economy.

reforestation: the act of planting trees in deforested areas

Several campaigns are set up by the local authorities to promote reforestation.

relocate: transfer a company or organisation to another location

Many big companies have relocated to developing countries spotting a better market niche as well as looking for future prospects.

renewable energy: the type of energy which could be renewed all by itself; renewables; renewable resources

The sun and wind are the endless sources of renewable energy.

renewable resources: elements like water and air which can be re-used; renewables

We should expand the use of renewables now more than any time to keep the natural resources untouched.

resource depletion: dramatic decrease in natural resources

Nonstop exploitation of oil, gas and other natural resources for industrial activities has precipitated dramatic resource depletion.

searing heat: very intense heat

The searing heat in colder parts of our planet can be a sign of climate change.

sewage: waste removed from buildings and carried away in pipelines

Many factories have polluted the rivers across the world by their harmful sewage.

sexual exploitation: sexual abuse

Nowadays, the sexual exploitation of youth and children has changed into a pressing international issue.

smokestack: a large chimney of a factory or funnel of a locomotive

Tall smokestacks are the important sources of dispersing pollutants which travel sometimes hundreds of miles and have negative impact on other clean areas.

social unrest: civil disorder; social violence caused by a group of people

Political corruption might lead to a growing wave of social unrest.

social welfare: social benefit

For example, Greek government have recently begun to focus on new policies on developing health, education and social welfare.

starvation: die of or suffer from hunger

On the other hand, many less well-off people face starvation because of the lack of adequate and healthy food in less economically prosperous

countries.

stockpile weapons: create huge amounts of explosives and weapons to be used in the future

These days, one of the most dangerous problems human beings face is stockpiling nuclear weapons in order to have powerful defence against possible worldwide animosities and threats.

subsidies: the money that is granted to the smaller companies or citizens to help them survive and develop

The governmental subsidies may aid private sector to develop and take more parts of the economy under control.

tainted: polluted

In order to reduce the level of tainted water, we need to identify industrial units that are the biggest polluters of river water.

temperatures soar: increase in temperature levels

A good example of this is Western Europe, where temperatures are soaring and the warm air is spreading across the continent. This may increase the risk of fire in forests and vast farming areas.

the biosphere: anywhere that flora and fauna can survive

Biologists are trying to control the dramatic changes in the global biosphere caused by nonstop deforestation and degradation of vegetation.

the destruction of the environment: environmental demolition or devastation

Illegal dumping ground has led to the destruction of the forest environments.

the spread of a disease: broader effects of a disease

Countries with poor hygiene experience the continuous spread of sexually-transmitted diseases.

tidal energy: energy obtained from tides into useful forms of power, mainly electricity

As has been noted, despite the fact that tidal energy is an inexhaustible source of energy as well as an environment friendly energy without producing greenhouse gases, the cost of construction of tidal power plant is high, it might influence aquatic life adversely and can disrupt migration of fish and usually the places where tidal energy is produced are far away from the places where it is consumed.

toxic waste: poisonous waste of different industries

The disposal of toxic waste has led to the apparently uncontrollable destruction of habitats as well as environmental contamination.

tributary: a line of water streaming to a larger river

Illegal use of water in many countries has caused tributaries pouring into rivers dry putting the local flora and fauna in great danger.

unleaded fuel: fuel produced from crude oil

Scientific evidence shows that unleaded fuel may be causing new waves of cancer and making a profound contribution to environmental degradation.

unprovoked violence: violence against innocent people

The police might as well crack down on serious crimes such as unprovoked violence and attack.

urbanisation: the process by which towns and cities are formed

The recent transformation of the social fabric through urbanisation has its own privileges such as more social welfare and economic prosperity, nonetheless, it has created many serious psychological problems on a social scale.

violence escalates: violence increases dramatically

Perhaps it can be said that the more modern we have become, the more the levels of violence have escalated.

water cycle: the cycle of processes by which water circulates between the earth's oceans, atmosphere, and land

Among the most serious environmental policy issues confronting society are the potential changes in the water cycle due to climate change.

waste disposal: getting rid of things you do not need anymore

Setting up new landfills in remote areas may be a short-term solution to an issue called waste disposal, it might eventually create environmental problems which seem rather unsurmountable.

waste disposal: throwing away the unnecessary things

Some firmly believe that waste disposal should be fined unexceptionally in order to have a cleaner place to live.

waste processing: recycling waste

Waste processing is the crucial part of waste management.

water filtration: water purification

New water filtration systems can aid to decrease the overconsumption of drinkable water.

water scarcity: the lack of water

The scarcity of clean water has driven many plant species to the verge of extinction.

water shortage/lack of access to clean water: when there is no drinkable

water available to drink

Water shortage has reached a critical point due to reasons such as water overuse and less precipitation levels.

welfare programs: programs that give money to poor people

Furthermore, creating new welfare programs may boost the economy and motivate people to work harder for a better future.

widespread flooding: flood happening in many areas

Rising sea levels because of the huge ice melts in the North and South poles have made human beings suffer from widespread flooding.

widespread unemployment: joblessness in many places

Rising rate of inflation can weaken people's purchasing power and lead to widespread unemployment.

wildlife management: the science of reaching goals by manipulating or maintaining wildlife habitats and populations

Wildlife management practices are often implemented by a governmental agency to uphold a law, such as the Endangered Species Act.

wind energy/power: energy or power generated by wind power

First and foremost, wind energy, it goes without saying, is a renewable energy resource and appears to be quite cost-effective. Moreover, based on what scientists say, not only wind energy is a clean fuel source, but also it does not pollute the air like power plants that rely on combustion of fossil fuels. Furthermore, Wind turbines don't produce atmospheric emissions that increase health problems like asthma or create acid rain or greenhouse gases. Finally, wind power is inexhaustible, meaning that it is actually a form of solar energy. Winds are caused by the heating of the atmosphere by the sun, the rotation of the Earth, and the Earth's surface irregularities. For as long as the sun shines and the wind blows, the [energy produced can be harnessed](#) to send power across the grid.

wind farm: a place full of windmills to generate electricity

Regarding the disadvantages of wind energy, it can be said that good wind sites are often located in remote locations, far from cities where the electricity is needed. As a consequence, transmission lines must be built to bring the electricity from the wind farm to the city, which seems to be a costly process. In addition, wind farms and their turbines are noisy and may spoil the view for people living near them and change the viewshed. Though wind turbines harm wildlife less than some conventional sources of electricity, turbine blades could damage local wildlife. Reportedly, many birds have

been killed by flying into spinning turbine blades over the last decades.

SPORT



all-round form of exercise: comprehensive exercise

This all-round form of exercise is used in the treatment of physical and mental illnesses such as depression, because it can raise levels of the mood enhancer, serotonin.

athlete: sportsman or sportswoman

Nowadays, professional athletes earn huge salaries and experience luxurious lifestyle.

brisk/vigorous walk: fast and energetic walk

Doctors say that an hour of brisk walk can safeguard our health to some degree.

build up one's strength/resistance: become stronger physically or become resistant against diseases

We need to build up your strength by doing plenty of daily exercise and eating a healthy diet.

burn calories: use up the energy stored in one's body by being physically active

Running and weight lifting are very efficient ways to burn calories.

cardiovascular: affecting the heart and blood circulation

Cardiovascular exercises like running or jogging have been shown to have a positive effect on blood fats by reducing cholesterol levels and also lowering blood pressure by improving glucose tolerance and reducing insulin resistance.

champion: record holder in sports; an athlete who has defeated or surpassed all his rivals

National champions are normally counted as noteworthy assets who can persuade the youth to take part in sports and lead a healthier and more balanced lifestyle.

changing room: a room where people get changed; locker room

The sanitation of changing room is of significant importance and may affect the athletes psychologically.

circuit training: a series of many different exercises done quickly after each other, in order to increase your fitness

It is better for the beginners who haven't done much exercise not to do intense circuit training.

compete in a sport: do a sport in competitions

Another way forward is to encourage their offsprings to compete in a sport and make their best attempt to gain more communication skills.

do extreme sports: do dangerous sports

Normal citizens do not need to do extreme sports in order to keep fit.

do sport: do workout

The recent scientific findings depict that doing sport on a regular basis can increase the brain functioning to some extent.

do yoga/gymnastics/martial arts/aerobics: do such exercises

A research done in the UK showed that the employees who do yoga every day for about half an hour seem to be more concentrated during the working hours.

doping: use drugs to enhance sport performance level

Doping in sport remains controversial because it might put sportspeople's lives in danger and definitely destroy the potential achievements of other clean athletes who have made their best attempts to reach standard levels of performance.

field sports: outdoor sports such as shooting, hunting, and fishing

Field sports might be a good way of resting and enjoying yourself at the weekends.

fixture: a sports event being scheduled in a specific time and place

Another way of involving the youth in health activities is to arrange seasonal fixtures.

footwork: use of foot in playing a sport

Sports which require efficient footwork can aid our children to gain more physical skills.

gentle exercise: not extreme exercise

We need to do even a gentle exercise per day to feel much better at home or at work.

gruelling sport: tiring sport

Taking part in gruelling sports may not always result in rewarding physical conditions.

inter-school sports event: an sports event between different schools

School principals and sport teachers can organise annual interschool sports events to bring the students from various schools together and let them hone their interpersonal skills.

keep in shape: keep fit

The hectic pace of life doesn't let many city dwellers to do some exercises on a daily basis and keep in shape.

leisurely/gentle exercises: easy exercises

A little bit of daily leisurely exercises might help us feel more exhilarating.

physical education: (PE) school sport and physical exercise

The results coming from physical education and sport pedagogy show how effectual can sports activities be in students' educational life.

play a sport: take part in a sport

Evidence shows that the children who play a sport at least once or twice a week seem to act more successfully in their studies.

playable: a place suitable to do sport

The local authorities can put more resources on playable grounds and make them appropriate for the younger generations to play a sport in their leisure time.

spectator: viewer; observer; audience

Sports events such as football matches attract millions of spectators every year and can be mentioned as a way of social communication as well as a way of making tremendous money for the athletes and the organisers of the events.

sports event: a sports competition or match bringing many people together

The arrangement of annual sports events is a good way of bringing the students together and giving them a chance to gain more social experiences.

sports facilities: whatever you need to do sport

The government should provide even the small towns with sports facilities to partly overcome the issues of addiction and crime among the youth.

take part in (a) sport: do sport

Pupils should learn to take part in sports in order to build up effective relationship with their peers in addition to build up their strength and resistance.

take up a sport: start doing a sport

Furthermore, the second solution to the thorny problem of obesity is to take up a sport at least twice a week in order to lose weight and stay in shape afterwards.

watch what you eat: be careful about you food quality and intake

It appears to be paramount to watch what you eat. You do not need to go on

a heavy and strict diet. Just make your best attempt to eat the right food at the right time.

THE GOVERNMENT



accountability: responsibility; answerability; the expectation of accounting

It is clear that governmental inefficiencies can soon or late lead to weaker public accountability.

accountable: responsible

Being publicly accountable seems to be a hallmark of modern governance and management.

administration: running an organisation, etc.; the government of a country
First and most importantly, an efficient administration needs to establish effective and excellent interpersonal communication skills in order to forge a good rapport. Another key point is that a professional administrator should ensure that the organization functions properly through formulating strategies and business decisions. The final point is that a good manager should have the organisational ability to keep track of all their tasks, be it scheduling meetings, organizing files or taking notes.

adopt policies: approve laws

The other possibility for the government is to adopt policies that encourage women to have more social activities.

annul: officially cancel an agreement; revoke

The travel ban executive order was annulled by a number of federal judges because it was unconstitutional.

annulment: cancellation; revocation; nullification

The annulment of some restrictive immigration laws can ease the process for young immigrants.

association: a professional organization

Firstly, it is the duty of the national medical association to examine the quality of health care system and make their best attempt to make it more efficient.

austerity: bad economic condition

In spite of the fact that austerity measures can increase the tax revenue, it might, on the other hand, lower the level of economic growth.

autocracy: dictatorship

Historically speaking, autocrats need a power structure to rule, thus, it can be difficult to draw a clear line between historical autocracies and

[oligarchies.](#)

autocrat leadership: a ruler who has complete power over a country
An autocratic leadership style which relies on one person to make decisions might end up with poor performance and low morale.

be a ban on: prohibit

Many argue that there should be a ban on smoking on public places.

be subject to a rule/law/penalty/tax etc.: must obey the rule and law or pay a penalty

In some countries, traffic violators are strictly subject to a substantial penalty in order for the government to reduce traffic crime rates.

bilateral: two-sided; mutual; reciprocal

The bilateral agreement between Europe and Asia on climate change might affect the harsh climatic situation in all other continents.

body politic: the people of a nation

The concept of body politic considers all the citizens of a nation a single entity.

budget deficit: when the government does not have enough money

The government might hope the increase in tax rates and governmental spending cuts will reduce the budget deficit and jump-start the economy.

budget surplus: when the government has more money than it needs

A budget surplus can have impact on ability to survive future problems, nevertheless, it might cause higher taxes and lower spending which could have an adverse effect on the rate of economic growth.

bureaucracy: unnecessary and complicated official paperwork; red tape

Turning to the possible disadvantages of bureaucracy, some critics argue that red tape can hamper achievement of results in time, especially when the results are needed immediately. Such repetitive tasks might breed boredom among the members of the organisation and can negatively affect the level of productivity. Furthermore, unnecessary official paperwork can result in passive and rule-based human beings as well as remove the freedom of the individuals to act and discern on their own because of certain restrictions.

cabinet: the main members of the government appointed by its leader

The cabinet's role is to advise the president on any subject he may require relating to the duties of each member's respective office.

canvass: solicit votes from electors

Candidates from different parties normally canvass to receive more votes before the presidential election.

central government: national government

One possibility for the central government is to introduce legislation in order to help less-off families receive a good education.

city-state: an independent state

To conclude, notwithstanding the rulers grew wealthy from banking and commerce and mistreated sometimes common people, city-states were, generally speaking, able to develop their own cultures, they ended feudalism and encouraged patriotism as well as supported art and sciences.

coalition: an alliance of political parties

Regarding the drawbacks of coalition government, it can be said that it appears to be a weaker and less decisive or more confused government, therefore, it is difficult for political control to be implemented when there are multiple parties involved such as in a coalition. Moreover, the coalition does not provide one party with the power to implement their ideas so the end result is that very few ideas, if any, are implemented because an agreement cannot be reached between parties. Finally, there could be a great deal of instability within a coalition government.

constitution: basic laws and principles of a country

Many countries, nowadays, attempt to reform their constitutions in order to provide a better foundation for freedom and justice.

democracy: a free political system in which the government is elected by people's votes

Freedom of speech and criticism are two essential prerequisites of democracy.

desegregation: a system in which people of different races are kept separate

Moreover, racial desegregation can largely create serious conflicts between different nationalities.

disinformation: false information

Disinformation in the government, in addition, can hamper the process of problem-solving and create havoc in the society.

embargo: boycott; sanctions

Some argue that imposing strict embargo against a country makes it economically and politically stronger.

enforcement agencies: legal bodies controlling the law being enforced

Lastly, it is not enough only to bring in new laws against smuggling. It is also important for the enforcement agencies to have control on how these laws

are obeyed.

federalism: belief in or support for a federal system of government

To recapitulate, notwithstanding federalism might prevent the creation of a national policy and lead to a lack of political accountability, it can aid to foster state loyalties, definitely lead to political stability and encourage pluralism on a social scale as well.

government: the governors of a country

Overall, it is for the government to bring in new laws in order to tackle the problem of illiteracy.

have long-term effect on: affect for a long period of time

As scientific evidence shows, the increasing level of [fossil fuel](#) use has long term effects on the global climate.

infrastructure: the basic structures and facilities in a country

To recap, it can be mentioned that infrastructure development seems to be essential to increase the rate of economic growth and public welfare.

institution: an important organization such as a bank, church, or university

Possibly, important financial institutions such as banks should cooperate more with charity organisations in order to create a better wealth distribution system on a national scale.

internationalism: the belief that nations should cooperate and help each other worldwide

According to proponents of economic internationalism, the well-off countries should help the poor ones overcome their financial difficulties and experience a better life.

land/agrarian reform: reallocation of agricultural lands to the landless people

For the most part, notwithstanding land reform, according to its opponents seems to be an intensely political process, it might help eradicate food insecurity and alleviate rural poverty by including the poor in formal legal and economic systems, increasing the poor's ability to access credit and contributing to economic growth and poverty reduction.

launch/mount a campaign: start a campaign

It seems crucial that the government should put more resources into launching a campaign to support the green movement.

lead a campaign: direct a campaign

The first solution is for the government to lead a social media campaign to alleviate the effects of global warming.

legislature: an body that has the power to make or change laws

The state legislature should pass a new law requiring people to stop smoking in public spaces.

local authority/government: the governors of a city or town

The way forward the local authorities is to stop overspending and raise money to set up a campaign towards addressing the issue of beggary all over the city.

lower tax: decrease tax

It is paramount to mention that lowering taxes on less well-off families might help boost their earnings.

maladministration: bad management

Regarding the possible causes of maladministration, it can be said that improper administrative conduct might be, firstly, caused by misleading and inaccurate statements made by the person in charge. Moreover, inadequate liaisons which might stop the members of the team consulting and helping each other may be another reason an administrator can fail and go possibly bust. Consequently, in an administrative system without following procedures or laws as well as providing relevant information towards raising awareness of the personnel about current issues, it is possible for the manager to lead his organisation into a cul-de-sac. Finally, broken promises and failure to respond to subordinates' needs might be considered as obvious reasons for inefficient administration.

mandate: the authority to make decisions because of being elected by the people to do so

An important issue which can make the Congress to impeach the president is that sometimes he seeks mandate more than he can.

meritocracy: a social system based on talent and ability

Some postulate that meritocracy can lead to better leadership of a country and create a faster process for the whole system. In addition, they say that talent-based power distribution might simplify the law-making process and cut the level of corruption to a great extent. Finally, they claim that giving authority based on people's capabilities can result in better welfare and social security.

misrule: bad government; maladministration

The proponents of meritocracy believe that it can alleviate the grave issues such as corruption and poverty through alleviating misrule and maladministration.

monarchy: the system in which a country is ruled by a king or queen

At the same time, the dissidents of monarchy think that the country may suffer from dependency on the leader as well as having difficulty to change internally. They also presume that there might be a higher chance of rebellion and political instability.

national debt: the total amount of money that the government has borrowed

The first possible remedy is that the government should put tax on fossil fuels in order to finance the national debt.

nationalisation: transfer from private to governmental control

Given these points, although nationalisation as a modern phenomenon can lead to less intervention of public in economic affairs and lack of spirit of competition and freedom, it can definitely safeguard, in my view, the interests of labourers, technical efficiency, lower cost of production and employment opportunities.

non-proliferation: decrease the number of nuclear weapons in the world

Some argue that nuclear non-proliferation policy might bring more security to our world while others think that it may give a greater chance to big powers to rule the world more easily in the absence of competitors.

oligarchy: a country run by small group of people

In a word, notwithstanding oligarchy might lead to individualism and a sort of self-empowerment for people in a space that voting matters for everyone, it can, in contrast, help the wealthy have the society under their complete control as well as aid a small portion of the fabric of the society to make important decisions which could substantially be a cause of slow system or even racism.

open-door policy: the principle of allowing people and goods to move into a country freely

After all, open-door policy might encourage communication between the employee and the management as well as healthy discussion at the workplace. It also enables the employees to seek their boss's help and freely discuss things with them for better clarity. Open door policy, in my view, is essential for effective communication, proper feedbacks and better output.

organization: an organised body of people

In reality, forming a charitable foundation is not an easy task and significant effort is required to establish one which can provide the poor with income and service.

party: a political organization which can join the presidential elections
All in all, although a political party can help establish order as governing bodies towards having a safe and controlled environment for everyone to live in and voters freely express themselves about the governing parties that are running to rule their country, the fabric of the society, at the same time, might suffer from a lack of equality if there are numerous parties.

plutocracy: a ruling class or government that consists of rich people, or a country that is governed by rich people
Obviously, plutocracy can, in my view, create and widen the gap between the poor and the rich and cause more conflict which might eventually lead to a bipolar society.

privatization: selling governmental property to private sector
The first reason for the privatisation of education is that the government's policy prefers quantity over quality pushing people to establish their own private schools to enhance the quality.

provide more funding for: invest in
The way forward for the government is to provide more funding for establishing rural hospitals and schools.

public service: a governmental service, such as transport or health care
There is a consensus among experts that governmental effort to improve quality in public services can provide people with a better life-work balance.

put/place/impose ban on something: prevents something
On the one hand, some scholars firmly believe that the government should put ban on smoking in public places.

raise tax: increase tax
One solution to the lack of financial resources is for the central government to raise taxes on the rich.

ratification of a treaty: official confirmation of a treaty
Any attempt to delay ratification of the treaty on global warming can exacerbate the situation for next generations.

ratify an agreement: confirm or approve officially
Different countries need to ratify an agreement on the partial resolution of a thorny problem called climate change.

regime: a government
Absolutism and totalitarianism are inseparable parts of a regime which is elected illegally and dishonestly.

regulatory bodies/authorities/agencies: organisations which protect

people in different areas

A part of social security can be created by regulatory bodies that provide the citizens with health care services.

repeal: officially end a law

The recent government attempted to repeal and replace Obamacare, but the Congress refused to accept it.

revocation: official repeal of a law

Overall, although the revocation of the law which bans smoking in public places might be in favour of a minority of the fabric of the society, it can definitely violate personal rights law.

revoke: officially end a law

Many believe that thousands of poor citizens will lose insurance cover if the new government revokes the health care plan designed by the recent government.

sanction/embargo: official penalty for disobeying a law

As has been noted, notwithstanding economic sanctions can target dictatorships, increase their vulnerability to embargoes, directly affects the minds and attitude of the citizens, and, as a consequence, democratic movements will start to appear, many political theorists think that there is no clear link between economic sanctions and democratic movements and economic sanctions on autocrats cannot make the government suffer.

social democracy: a socialist system of government achieved by democratic means

Many social thinkers feel that social democracy is not a successful ideology because it could not alleviate the problems capitalism created.

stopgap measure: a temporary solution

As a whole, the main solution to air pollution is to levy tax on those who overuse private cars, nevertheless, this might be a stopgap measure.

temporary restriction on: a short term limit on

Many believe that the government, henceforth, should impose a temporary financial restriction on private companies.

the authorities: the government

Moreover, it seems crucial for the authorities to enact laws that prohibit drugs.

the executive: the administrative part of the government; law enforcer

The executive, the legislature and the judiciary are the three main parts of the government which should work closely together to better social welfare

and political system.

the welfare state: a system in which the government provides money, free medical care etc.. for people who are unemployed, ill, or too old to work

In either case, social security, national healthcare services and free education appears to be some of the advantages of the welfare state.

unconstitutional: against constitution

Despite the nonstop efforts of the president to ban weapons throughout the country, his opponents insist that the ban is unconstitutional and can have serious repercussions.

union: a workers' organization to protect their rights

All things considered, increased wages, improved job security and boosting productivity may be among the main advantages of trade unions, nonetheless, it is possible for the hard workers to be devalued.

WORK and BUSINESS



absenteeism: regular absence

Absenteeism is another reason for making some workers redundant.

achieve/fulfil/reach/realize your potential: succeed as much as possible

Most of the new workers find it challenging to achieve their potential.

agreement: a contract

Many believe that there should be a widespread agreement among political parties in order to promote economic growth by cutting government spending.

assurance: a guarantee

Job seekers should think about the jobs that offer assurance of long-term employment.

annulment: cancellation; stopping

Normally the annulment clause appears at the back of the contract.

audit: check the financial records of a company

To hire an accountant can aid the manager of the company to have the financial records audited annually.

be freelance or work freelance: someone works for different companies at different times without a contractual agreement

He's was freelance for a long time without having an official contract and insurance policy.

be on the day shift: do shift work on day

Being on the day shift let an employee have a good night sleep.

be stuck behind a desk: do office work every day

People who are stuck behind a desk might face physical problems when they get older.

black economy/market: secret businesses done to avoid tax

Another key point is that urgent actions should be taken by the government to stop the distribution of vital commodities in the black economy.

bloodletting: decrease in the number of workers

The bloodletting is irresistible at the time of economic crisis.

blue-collar: manual worker

Some politicians' political support comes mainly from blue-collar workers.

boom: boost in something like an activity

Removing the sanctions might lead to an enormous economic boom.

boundless energy: endless ability to work hard; indefatigable; inexhaustible energy; unflagging energy

In the long run, the boundless energy of young workers will not be perished if the authorities take the responsibility to introduce and develop a well-designed system of recruiting them and make most of their skills and abilities.

carve a niche for oneself: shift your position professionally above others
It is difficult for immigrants to carve a niche for themselves while they are not in their country of origin.

casual work: a short time job
Casual work might help students have a temporary income and therefore relieve their stress remarkably.

channel one's energy: direct one's energy
To put it another way, the way forward entrepreneurs is to channel the youth's energy into creativity and productivity.

clock in and clock out: use an electronic card to record the time she arrives and leaves each day
Employees must clock in and clock out on time in order to get away on time and not to be stuck behind the traffic jams.

close-knit: close partnership
Working in close-knit teams has kept him away from psychological issues.

cold-calling: call people randomly to sell them a product
The government has brought in strict new regulations against cold-calling.

collaborate: cooperate
One of the major roles a manager can play is to persuade his employees to collaborate and create a friendly work space.

collaboration: cooperation
The way forward the government is to start new factories in collaboration with private sector companies.

collaborative/cooperative effort: combined effort; synergy
There is a vital need for a collaborative effort by the governmental sectors to overcome a problematic phenomenon such as poverty.

commodity: a product
The more industrial goods and commodities are manufactured and supplied, the more seriously the natural environment is endangered by non-recyclable waste.

compassionate leave: stop working for a while because of a relative's

death or sickness

He has been given compassionate leave to return to his city on family matters.

competition: contest

Another way forward is to create a space for businesses to join the growing competition for dominance in the market.

confusion marketing: selling things in a confused way so that you have no idea which product has the lower price

Confusion marketing might lead the customers to buy the wrong items.

consume: use up

Human beings who consume large quantities of animal fats are more likely to become obese or get cancer.

contract: an official written agreement

In my view, companies which break their contract should be legally prosecuted and punished.

contractual: whatever which is agreed in a contract or agreement

The stuff that do not care about contractual obligations may soon be dismissed.

corporation: a big company

For example, recently a conglomerate of multinational corporations and local organisations merged to form a coalition against climate change.

co-worker/colleague: a fellow worker

Many co-workers got together and took industrial action after the managers cut their salaries off.

creditors: those to whom you owe them

The UN should ease the debts of poorer countries by officially warning their creditors.

debtors: those who owe money

Debtors such as Greece cannot make plans for their future development while they are experiencing an irresistible challenge to pay back their extremely high debts.

deficit: shortage

Many underdeveloped countries borrowed money to eliminate the deficit they faced in the middle of a world recession.

deskill: reduce the skill necessary to do a job

Technology has led factories and companies to be largely deskilled.

dismiss/fire/sack: send out of a job

Many immigrants are unfairly dismissed from their jobs.

distinguished/brilliant career: very successful

She retired last year after a distinguished career as a barrister.

do a job-share: have a 50% contract for the same job

When we get behind the working schedule, we try to compensate for our delay through doing a job-share.

do manual work: difficult job to do

People who do low-paid manual works have a lower life expectancy.

do market research: investigate the market

Companies do market research to spot a niche in the market and sell more of their products.

do routine tasks: do ordinary and boring tasks

Highly-educated people do routine tasks at the time of hardship.

do shift work or be a shift worker: switch regularly to work nights or days

Doing shift work may cause to ruin the workers' sleeping habits.

dynamic and fast-moving industry: developing industry

College leavers wish to get a good and constant job in the dynamic and fast-moving industry.

earn a good living: have a good income

We started doing e-commerce and now after some years of intensive work we earn a good living.

earnings-related: related to income

Insurance policy is usually written based on earning-related statistics.

enterprise: a company

It seems better for the economy to lower the number of state enterprises and promote privatisation.

entrepreneur: somebody who runs a business and creates jobs

Business entrepreneurs can play a pivotal role in boosting the economy and taking the black market under control.

ergonomics: knowledge about how to design working environments for more efficiency and productivity

If the workplace is ergonomically better designed, it might lead to more comfortable working conditions.

fast-track scheme: a programme to train gifted employees for the future posts in a company

The highly-gifted new staff are immediately put on a fast-track scheme in

order to take important organizational responsibilities.

fill-in/stand-in: someone who does someone else's job because that person is not there

Another possible solution is to replace a fill-in while your employee is away.

fit a description: meet or satisfy a requirement

Nowadays, young job seekers need to hand high qualifications in in order to fit the description and get a suitable job.

found: establish

The major entrepreneur should feel responsible to found new businesses on a national scale to lessen the level of unemployment.

franchise: a right given to somebody to do something

The growing fast-food franchises might end up with an irreversible health and longevity problems on an international scale.

get a living wage: make a living

The workers will not get even a living wage by the company, if the company goes bankrupt.

get one's priorities right: give importance to the right aspects of life

Every citizen needs to get his priorities right in order to bring balance to his personal and social life.

glamorous job: an interesting and admirable job

Teaching is really glamorous. Teachers are not stuck behind a desk doing a monotonous job.

go bust: go bankrupt

Obviously, small businesses go bust easily at the time of economic downturn comparing to big thriving companies.

go part-time: work on a part-time basis, not full-time

Many female workers might go part-time after their maternity leave to spend more time with their newly-born children.

hand in one's resignation: say that you are going to leave an organisation

Evidence shows that there have been many workaholics who have handed their resignation in and leave the organisations they have been working for a rather long time to get their priorities right.

hard sell: sell things forcefully

A hard sell can put pressure on the customers who may find it entirely off-putting.

have advantage over: be more beneficial

To begin with, many people think that establishing and running their own

businesses has a great advantage over being an employee in a company or a worker in a factory owned by somebody else.

have a nine-to-five job: work from 9:00 am to 5:00 pm

Some postulate that having a nine-to-five job could be boring after a while and it is good for the workers to do flexitime from time to time.

heavy workload: amount of work I have to do

Miners have a heavy workload which makes their job really difficult.

hierarchical: has a structure with powerful and less powerful people

Many big companies have a hierarchical structure which may result in reducing interdepartmental cooperation and communication.

hold a position: stay at a job

Those employees who succeed to hold their positions in a company for a long period of time normally assist the whole organisation to develop with their senses of responsibility and creativity.

holiday entitlement: eligible to take holidays

Workers without holiday entitlement might end up in boredom and probably resignation.

inertia selling: send unrequested products to potential customers in the hope of a possible sale

Companies using inertia selling technique may eventually lose the customers trust.

job satisfaction: the feeling of pleasure from doing your job

Psychologically speaking, teachers experience a high level of job satisfaction.

joblessness: unemployment

The level of joblessness has increased by 10% over the last few years.

join the staff: become a member of the staff of an organisation or institute, etc.

Joining the staff of a good company does not mean anything. You need to have good communication skills in order to establish rewarding future prospects.

land a job: get an unexpected job

Some of the workers who took industrial action were dismissed on the spot and they did not succeed to land a new job.

lay off: discontinue to work with; sack or fire unnecessary personnel; discharge

At the time of economic hardship many companies lay a great portion of their

workforce off in order to downsize their business costs and save money.

levy: ask people officially to pay their taxes

Levying heavy tax on traffic criminals may seem to be reasonable, however, it might lead to general opposition to the new traffic laws.

liquidate: close a company or firm

One of the problems many manufacturing companies are facing nowadays is that the government has levied heavy taxes on them and this may push their managers to liquidate them before going bankrupt.

live-in job: a job in which you live with the family you work for

The first benefit of a live-in job is that it might minimise the worker's costs of living.

lucrative career: a profitable career

Experts in science and technology are normally able to establish a lucrative career.

make a living: make enough money just to survive

Many educated people these days get simple jobs to make a living and pull their families out of poverty.

manufacturing industry: an industry that produce goods rather than services

Wood is one of the most energy-intensive manufacturing industry.

master new skills: learn new skills so well

Most of the newly-employed workers have shown that they have the willpower to master new skills.

maternity leave: a period that a mother is allowed to stop working in order to have a new baby

Companies have to anticipate the costs of a possible maternity leave.

mechanical job: a job the worker doesn't need to be creative

A mechanical job can be detrimental to the workers who tend to do creative jobs.

meet a deadline: finish a job by a predetermined time

In business companies, normally, the employees need to meet a deadline, especially the accountants.

menial tasks: boring jobs which need no skill

Experts do menial jobs in hard times to alleviate their financial problems.

merge: become one

Perhaps it is better for the governmental bodies to merge and lower the total annual expenses spent on them.

merger: when two companies become one

The gathering proposed the merger between major political powers in order to launch a new campaign against nuclear activities.

monopolize: have complete control on something

Another remedy for the government is to penalise those entrepreneurs who attempt to monopolise the import and export of certain commodities such as carpets, jewellery and cosmetics.

monopoly: a person or an economic or political body that have complete control on something

Some governmental authorities use their political power to have monopoly on the most profitable parts of an economy.

monotonous job: boring because it never changes

A monotonous job could be rooted from the lack of creativity and diversity at work.

motivated and eager job seeker: jobless people who really want to have a job

New industries and companies have given a great chance to the motivated and eager young job seekers to have a regular income and experience a standard lifestyle.

moving up the ladder: get promotion

The intense competition towards moving up the ladder sometimes results in severe animosity between the competitors.

nepotism: giving the best jobs to your family members

The notorious authorities rudely denied the allegations of nepotism and corruption.

obligate: bind legally

The government should pass new laws to support the private contractors which are obligated by their renewable contracts to work certain hours per week.

off-duty: not working

Another way forward is to be off-duty for a while in order to get refreshed.

opposite number: someone who does the same job

The French Defence Minister is to visit Japan later this month for talks with his Japanese opposite number.

out of work: jobless

Private entrepreneurs can also have a paramount role in creating new jobs and hiring those who have been out of work for a while.

out-of-pocket expenses: expenses paid to a third party by the employee and paid back to the employee by the employer

She prepared an invoice and wrote all the out-of-pocket expenses she has spent on the project.

outplacement: help the laid-off employees find new job opportunities

A consultancy firm usually provides the outplacement services which are paid for by the former employer and are achieved through practical advice and psychological support.

outwork: work from home

Another disadvantage of outwork might be that it cannot be done on based a timetable.

overstaffing: having more personnel than enough

Overstaffing often happens when a business experiences a sudden boom that is followed by a sudden decline. Some companies see the need to hire additional workers during their peak season, but they often commit to the mistake of hiring regular employees. Thus, when lean season comes, they have more workers than needed to handle the limited work. Overstaffing can lead to bankruptcy because of wasted money on wages.

overworked and underpaid: work too much and get paid less

Being overworked and underpaid seems to be a bitter reality in many industries and might demotivate many workers at large.

paperwork: office work

While not impacting your bottom line significantly, a reduction in the amount of paperwork will make a small contribution to reducing the impact your business has on the environment. Many customers also express a preference to work with more environmentally sound service providers, and this can be a point of difference when evaluating provider choice.

parental leave: a period that parents are allowed to stop working in order to have a new baby

Research shows that fewer divorces occur among parents where the father takes paternity leave, pointing yet again to the idea that there's much more to being a man than simply bringing home the bacon. In essence, the benefits of paternity leave boil down to a long-lasting, happy family life – and happy family lives mean happy, more productive employees.

party: a person or group of people joining a project

Legal provisions need to be taken into account in order to safeguard the benefits of the business parties.

patent: the copyright of an invention or product

The new app is protected strictly by patent and nobody else can produce or sell it.

paternity leave: a period that a father is allowed to stop working in order to have a new baby

Paternity leave increases job satisfaction, particularly among those with lower income and less formal education.

pecking-order: a system where some people have the right to get benefits or promotions before others

The result is an extended pecking order that includes – by increasing levels of information asymmetry – debt, public equity, private equity and angel finance.

perks: extra benefits like cash incentives, bonuses, etc.

Providing employees with perks such as cars or home appliances could motivate them to up their working efficacy.

pink-collar jobs/workers/industries: menial underpaid tasks done mainly by women

Over the recent years, actions have been taken by the government and humanitarian organisations to give women more leading roles than just the pink-collar jobs.

positive discrimination/affirmative action: offer jobs to people who were treated unfairly

The authorities can possibly reduce the racial tension through positive discrimination on behalf of the ethnic minorities.

preferment: promotion

The highly-qualified personnel went fast through the preferment process after ordination.

probation or probationary period: a short period of working during which the employees tests the quality of the employee

Newly-graduated students have to go through a three month probation period.

professional career: career related to one's job

New recruits are officially asked to hand in a massive documentation which shows their successful professional career in.

professional misconduct: bad or dishonest professional behaviour

Some workers have already been accused of being involved in professional misconduct. That is why it is difficult for them to get a new job.

prosperity: the good life; being in a good financial situation

Some say that economic prosperity can be created and shared through effective management and political liberty.

public-private partnerships: the cooperation of businesses and industries which are partly governmental and partly belong to private sector

The government can in part aid the smaller businesses through public-private partnerships giving them more financial strength.

putting together one's CV: prepare one's resume

After graduating from medical school, it is necessary for the job seekers to put together his CV.

rapport: communication or relationship

Most investigative interviewing protocols recommend building rapport with cooperative adult witnesses to increase the accuracy of their reports. Although a few recent studies support the benefits of rapport building on adult witness recall, no study has examined whether the timing of rapport in relation to post-event misinformation affects recall accuracy, and whether these effects are related to witness anxiety levels throughout the interview.

red tap: bureaucracy

Critics of bureaucracies argue that red tape, particularly those in government, cost time and money for taxpayers. Both Parkinson's Law and the Peter Principle were created to explain how bureaucracies become dysfunctional.

redundant: not required professionally

The government employed the majority of the workers who were made redundant.

reimburse: repay

The expenses of residence and accommodation will be reimbursed by the company.

repetitive job: something you repeat all the time

The owners of repetitive jobs might end up with boredom and depression.

restructure: reform, reorganise or revise

Tax system should be restructured to adjust the wealth distribution and boost social welfare.

retirement: stop working for ageing reasons

Retirement plans may be set up by employers, insurance companies, the government or other institutions such as employer associations or trade unions.

returner: someone who goes back to work after a long time away
Normally, it is not so easy for a returner to get well coordinated with the new work space.

revenue: income
A part of the company's total revenue is paid directly to charity companies.

rewarding career: a career which giving you a lot back
The higher is your education, the more rewarding can be your career.

sabbatical: a period when someone, especially someone in a university job, stops doing their usual work in order to study or travel
He, as a university instructor, goes on a sabbatical every seven years not only to have a rest, but also update himself academically.

salary increments: income increases
Salary increments can possibly be a good way of motivating workers to care more about the quality of their job.

seek a career in business/art/science/politics: look for a career in business...
Although many jobs are created every day in the global job market, it is not easy to seek a promising career in art.

self-employed: someone who works for his himself and is his own boss
Fortunately, there are pension plans for self-employed people as well.

service industry: an industry that provides people and companies with services, but not commodities
At least 60 percent of the jobs are created by the entrepreneurs who own the service industries.

set up/establish a company: start a company
Another way forward is to bring in less restrictive laws in order to cut red tape and rigid procedures for those who are attempting to set up a new company.

soft sell: gently persuading potential customers to buy something
Furthermore, soft selling often involves promotions like money-back guarantees and free-trial periods. By promising your customers that they'll be happy with their purchase, you can convince them to give you a chance. When you follow through on your promise, you'll earn their trust and gain repeat buyers. That can keep your financial goals on track.

split shift: a period of work that is divided into two or more parts on the same day
We work split shift and I have to commute several times a day.

stuck in a rut: work in a boring place which doesn't change at all
I have been stuck in a rut for ages. There is no variety in my job.

subsidiary: a smaller branch of a company
New subsidiaries established abroad by large multinational companies might be a way forward to create more job opportunities for the unemployed from poorer countries.

successful career: a rewarding career
New employees need to fit the company's description in order to pursue a successful career.

sweated labour: overworked and underpaid
Job seekers with lower credentials and qualifications are used mostly as sweated labour carrying out manual work in heavy industries.

switch off: give a break
The reason why small private businesses are mostly unable to switch off even at the weekends is associated with high risk rooted from highly competitive market.

take industrial action: begin a strike
The law should be handled in a way that the employees who take industrial action cannot be easily dismissed.

take priority over: be more important than
People whose work takes priority over their personal life start deteriorating their family life and change eventually into a workaholic.

take up the post: start work
When he went back to his country, he restarted his old job and took up the post of editor of a leading medical journal as well.

taking on responsibility: start to have responsibility for something
Nowadays women tend to take on more responsibility in the workplace.

talk shop: talk about work
When the workmates do socialise with each other, they try not to talk shop.

tariff: tax on import and export
Some countries impose tariffs on imports in order to support domestic products.

telemarketing: selling things by phone
It has voicemail, cordless phone ability and extra call centre features that enable telemarketing and a customer service centre.

telesales: selling things by calling people
Sales personnel work on fully automated telesales systems.

teleworker: someone who works from home

E-commerce is a fast-growing part of international economy and has pushed many people to continue their professional career as teleworkers.

the virtues of hard work: the benefits or advantages of hard work

Employees normally extol the virtues of hard work and attempt to create a common aim to fulfil in the workplace.

the wider economy: the economy of a country

The negative effects of unemployment and low purchasing power can be observed in different parts of the wider economy.

time and motion study: assessment of work efficiency

The army group undertook a time-and-motion study of the most efficient way of laying mines.

turnover: money taken by a company

The annual turnover of an export company depends on tax levels levied by the government.

underemployed: working in a job where you cannot use all your skills or where there is not enough work for you to do

Many skilled staff has been underemployed because of the problems the recruitment department was struggling with.

understaffed: not have enough personnel

After the formidable economic crisis many companies became understaffed and nearly bankrupt.

unemployed: jobless

Another efficient solution to the rocketing issue of unemployment is to aid the unemployed to create their own jobs and run their own businesses.

unemployment benefit/compensation: payment made by the government to jobless people

The unemployment benefits can definitely aid jobless people to a great extent.

unlock/unleash somebody's potential: give somebody the chance to succeed as much as possible

On the job programmes might be a good way of unleashing the employees' potential.

unskilled: an unskilled worker has not been trained for a particular type of job

Companies generally employ unskilled labour for general tasks.

vocational work: a job which needs special skills to be done

Teaching is a glamorous vocational work. It can help people learn things.

white-collar: office worker

The economic recession has put many white-collar workers in danger of losing their jobs.

work flexi-time or be on flexi-time: a system in which people work a particular number of hours each week or month, but can change the times at which they start and finish each day

Some believe that the staff who work flexi-time seem to be less stressed than the full-time workers because they can manage to have a more flexible and balanced lifestyle.

work in antisocial hours: work in hours which deprives you from a normal social life

Most of the time I have to stay in the office and work in antisocial hours.

working in dead-end jobs: jobs without any future prospects

He has to run errands and work in dead-end jobs to make a living.

working-class: belonging to the class of people who do not have much money or power, and who have jobs where they do physical work.

Most of the people who live round here are working class.

working relationship: the way in which we communicate and work together

To start with, it is a fact that the better working relationships are forged in a company, the higher the total productivity would be.

workmates: colleagues, especially in nonprofessional jobs

He went out for a drink with his workmates.

Useful tips on IELTS academic writing task 2

Word count

You need to write a minimum of 250 words to carry out the task and not to fall below acceptable standards. It is also recommended not to exceed 300 words in order to save time for final correction.

Priority

Some candidates may choose to do the essay task 1 first. Although this depends largely on you, it is strongly recommended to write the task 2 essay first whereas it affects your writing mark significantly more and needs, therefore, more focus and energy.

Timing

You have a maximum 40 minutes to understand the topic question, brainstorm your ideas and write down the essay in a real exam. For more specific timing for brainstorming, writing the paragraphs and final correction, you can refer to each unit in this book.

Topics

IELTS academic writing task 2 questions are meticulously chosen from general topics such as social life, travel, education, etc. and you do not need to use expert language and highly complicated vocabulary. If the examiner cannot follow and does not understand your essay, you are possibly going to lose mark.

Language

You should not use informal language like phrasal verbs, slangs, street talks, proverbs, sayings, jargons, contracted forms and personal language. You need to use your academic linguistic skills –grammatically and lexically- in order to convey your ideas about the given topic.

Handwriting

There is no extra time considered for rewriting your essay neatly in a separate answer sheet, therefore, it is highly recommended to write neatly from the beginning being careful about spelling and readability of your essay. This might affect your band score.

Paraphrase

Paraphrase the ideas, words and collocations of the topic question if you want to use them in your essay. Do not copy them directly to your piece of writing. This will definitely lose marks for this.

Brainstorming

Use your answer sheet or a separate piece of paper for jotting down your key ideas for each body paragraph. Nobody is going to read and mark your key ideas you have already brainstormed.

Practice

Use sample answer sheet you can download from the Internet to write your practice tasks. This can help you guess the number of words you have already written if you are not good at counting words.

General vocabulary List

Abandon, abstract, academy, access, accommodate, accompany, accumulate, accurate, acknowledge, achieve, acquire, adapt, adequate, adjacent, adjust, administrate, adult, advocate, affect, aggregate, aid, albeit, allocate, alter, alternative, ambiguous, amend, analogy, analyse, annual, anticipate, apparent, append, appreciate, approach, appropriate, approximate, arbitrary, area, aspect, assemble, assess, assign, assist, assume, assure, attach, attain, attitude, attribute, author, authority, available, automate, aware, behalf, benefit, bias, bond, brief, bulk, capable, capacity, category, cease, challenge, channel, chapter, chart, chemical, circumstance, cite, civil, clarify, classic, clause, code, coherent, coincide, collapse, colleague, commence, comment, commission, commit, commodity, communicate, community, compatible, compensate, compile, complement, complex, component, compound, comprehensive, comprise, compute, conceive, concentrate, concept, conclude, concurrent, conduct, confer, confine, confirm, conflict, conform, consent, consequent, considerable, consist, constant, constitute, constrain, construct, consult, consume, contact, contemporary, context, contract, contradict, contrary, contrast, contribute, controversy, convene, converse, convert, convince, cooperate, coordinate, core, corporate, correspond, couple, create, credit, criteria, crucial, culture, currency, cycle, data, debate, decade, decline, deduce, define, definite, demonstrate, denote, deny, depress, derive, design, despite, detect, deviate, device, devote, differentiate, dimension, diminish, discrete, discriminate, displace, display, dispose, distinct, distort, distribute, diverse, document, domain, domestic, dominate, draft, drama, duration, dynamic, economy, edit, element, eliminate, emerge, emphasis, empirical, enable, encounter, energy, enforce, enhance, enormous, ensure, entity, environment, equate, equip, equivalent, erode, error, establish, estate, estimate, ethic, ethnic, evaluate, eventual, evident, evolve, exceed, exclude, exhibit, expand, expert, explicit, exploit, export, expose, external, extract, facilitate, factor, feature, final, focus, federal, fee, file, finance, finite, flexible, fluctuate, format, formula, forthcoming, found, foundation, framework, function, fund, fundamental, furthermore, gender, generate, generation, globe, goal, grade, grant, guarantee, guideline, hence, hierarchy, highlight, hypothesis, identical, identify, ideology, ignorant, illustrate, image, immigrate, impact, injure, institute, implement, implicate, implicit, imply, impose, incentive, incidence, incline, income, incorporate, index, indicate,

individual, induce, inevitable, infer, infrastructure, inherent, inhibit, initial, initiate, innovate, input, insert, insight, inspect, instance, instruct, integral, integrate, integrity, intelligence, intense, interact, intermediate, internal, interpret, interval, intervene, intrinsic, invest, investigate, invoke, involve, isolate, issue, item, job, journal, justify, label, labour, layer, lecture, legal, legislate, levy, liberal, license, link, locate, logic, maintain, normal, major, manipulate, manual, margin, mature, maximize, mechanism, media, mediate, medical, medium, mental, method, military, minimal, minimize, minimum, ministry, minor, mode, modify, monitor, motive, mutual, negate, network, neutral, norm, notion, nuclear, objective, obtain, obvious, occupy, occur, odd, offset, ongoing, oppose, option, orient, outcome, output, overall, overlap, overseas, panel, paradigm, paragraph, parallel, parameter, participate, partner, passive, perceive, percent, period, persist, perspective, phase, phenomenon, philosophy, physical, plus, policy, portion, positive, potential, practitioner, precede, precise, predict, predominant, preliminary, presume, previous, primary, prime, principal, principle, prior, priority, proceed, process, professional, prohibit, project, promote, proportion, prospect, protocol, psychology, publication, publish, purchase, pursue, qualitative, quote, radical, random, range, ratio, rational, react, recover, refine, regime, region, register, regulate, reinforce, reject, relax, release, relevant, reluctance, rely, remove, require, research, reside, resource, resolve, respond, restore, restrain, restrict, retain, reveal, revenue, reverse, revise, revolution, rigid, role, route, scenario, schedule, scheme, scope, section, sector, secure, seek, select, sequence, series, sex, shift, significant, similar, simulate, site, so-called, sole, somewhat, source, specific, specify, sphere, stable, statistic, status, straightforward, strategy, stress, structure, style, submit, subordinate, subsequent, subsidy, substitute, successor, sufficient, sum, summary, supplement, survey, survive, suspend, sustain, symbol, tape, target, task, team, technique, technology, temporary, tense, terminate, text, theme, theory, thereby, thesis, topic, trace, tradition, transfer, transform, transit, transmit, transport, trend, trigger, ultimate, undergo, underlie, undertake, uniform, unify, unique, utilize, valid, vary, vehicle, version, via, violate, virtual, visible, vision, visual, volume, voluntary, welfare, whereas, whereby, widespread